unfoldingWord® Greek Grammar

Release 1

unfoldingWord

Apr 04, 2024

CONTENTS

CONTENTS

UNFOLDINGWORD GREEK GRAMMAR

1.1 Introduction

1.2 Rationale

1.3 Methodology

1.4 Future

For questions, comments, feedback, or to find out more information about helping with this project and/or others like it please contact Grant Ailie at grant.ailie@unfoldingword.org

1.5 Contributors

This resource was designed by the unfoldingWord Project and built by the Door43 World Missions Community. At least the following people were instrumental in the creation of the UGG:

- Joe B. Nathan III (BA Missiology, Crown College; MDIV Bethel Seminary)

- Chapel M. Presson (BA Pre-Seminary Studies/Bible, Central Bible College; MDiv, Liberty Baptist Theological Seminary)

- Todd L. Price (BA Biblical Languages, Calvary Bible College; MA Biblical Languages, Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary; PhD New Testament & Corpus Linguistics, London School of Theology)

- Grant I. Ailie (B.A. Biblical Studies, Criswell College; MDiv, Liberty Baptist Theological Seminary)

1.6 License

1.6.1 Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0)

This is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

You are free to:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material

for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: "Original work available at https://unfoldingword. org/ugg/." Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

No additional restrictions — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

Notices:

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

ADJECTIVE

2.1 Summary

An `adjective` is a word that describes a person(s), place(s), or thing(s). Within a sentence, an adjective usually describes a noun.

2.2 Article

In Koiné Greek, adjectives generally match the noun they describe in gender and number. Attributive adjectives specifically must also match the noun they describe in case. Any Greek adjective can take the form of all three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. Adjectives show these various forms by using the same kinds of word endings as nouns. Greek adjectives are listed in a lexicon according to the masculine nominative singular form.

Note: Adjectives change form according to the base form of the adjective itself, NOT the base form of the noun it is describing. For example, the feminine dative singular form of the adjective πάς is always πάςῃ. The form will not change when describing any feminine dative noun. This remains true regardless of the kind of feminine dative word ending that appears on the noun.

2.3 Form

2.3.1 Paradigm

Most adjectives in Koiné Greek use one of the following sets of word endings. However, there are more sets of word endings for adjectives in Greek than are listed here. See adjective_paradigms for more. See especially Master Table 1 and Master Table 2 Master Tables.

Table 1: ἀγαθός, "good"

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
Genitive	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ
Dative	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ
Accusative	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν
Vocative	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
Plural			
Nominative	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
Genitive	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν
Dative	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς
Accusative	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθάς	ἀγαθά
Vocative	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά

Table 2: ἅγιος, "holy"

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἅγιος	ἁγία	ἅγιον
Genitive	ἁγίου	ἁγιάς	ἁγίου
Dative	ἁγίῳ	ἁγίᾳ	ἁγίῳ
Accusative	ἅγιον	ἁγίαν	ἅγιον
Vocative	ἅγιε	ἁγία	ἅγιον
Plural			
Nominative	ἅγιοι	ἅγιαι	ἅγια
Genitive	ἁγίων	ἁγίων	ἁγίων
Dative	ἁγίοις	ἁγίαις	ἁγίοις
Accusative	ἁγίους	ἁγίας	ἅγια
Vocative	ἅγιοι	ἅγιαι	ἅγια

Table 3: ἄλλος, "other, another"

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἄλλος	ἄλλη	ἄλλο
Genitive	ἄλλου	ἄλλης	ἄλλου
Dative	ἄλλῳ	ἄλλῃ	ἄλλῳ
Accusative	ἄλλον	ἄλλην	ἄλλο
Plural			
Nominative	ἄλλοι	ἄλλαι	ἄλλα
Genitive	ἄλλων	ἄλλων	ἄλλων
Dative	ἄλλοις	ἄλλαις	ἄλλοις
Accusative	ἄλλους	ἄλλας	ἄλλα

Table 4: πᾶς, "all, every"

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
Genitive	παντός	πάσης	παντός
Dative	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
Accusative	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
Plural			
Nominative	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
Genitive	πάντων	πασῶν	πάντων
Dative	πᾶσι(ν)	πάσαις	πᾶσι(ν)
Accusative	πάντας	πάσας	πάντα

2.3.2 Examples

Table 5: Ephesians 1:3, "who has blessed us with every spiritual blessing"

ὁ	εὐλογήσας	ἡμᾶς	ἐν	πάσῃ	εὐλογίᾳ	πνευματικῇ
ho	eulogēsas	hēmas	en	pasē	eulogia	pneumatikē
who	has blessed	us	with	every	blessing	spiritual

In the above example the adjectives πάσῃ and πνευματικῇ are in feminine singular form. They agree with the noun εὐλογιᾳ in gender and number. These adjectives are both attributive. Therefore, they also agree in case.

Table 6: John 10:11, "I am the good shepherd."

ἐγώ	εἰμι	ὁ	ποιμὴν	ὁ	καλός.
Egō	eimi	ho	poimēn	ho	kalos.
I	I am	the	shepherd	the	good

The adjective always appears in the form that represents the true gender of the noun. The above example is a statement of Jesus (a man). The pronoun ἐγώ ("I") is in masculine singular form. Therefore, any adjective describing ἐγώ must also appear in masculine singular form. In this example, the adjective ποίμην appears to be feminine because it ends with "ην". However, the adjective ποίμην uses a different set of word endings than listed above. In this example, both ποιμήν and καλός are nominative masculine singular.

2.3.3 Ascriptive adjectives

An `ascriptive adjective` is an adjective that functions as an attributive adjective and is NOT paired with the definite article.

The noun being described by an ascriptive adjective may or may not be paired with the definite article.

Table 7: 1 John 2:7, "I am not writing a new commandment to you, but an old commandment..."

οὐκ		ἐντολὴν	καινὴν	γράφω	ὑμῖν	ἀλλ'		ἐντολὴν	παλαιὰν
ouk		entolēn	kainēn	graphō	hymin	all'		entolēn	palaian
not	commandment	new	I write	to you	but	commandment	old		

2.3.4 Restrictive adjectives

A `restrictive adjective` is an adjective that functions as an attributive adjective and IS paired with the definite article

The noun being described by a restrictive adjective may or may not be paired with the definite article but is always a definite noun.

Table 8: John 2:1, "and there was a wedding on the third day"

Καὶ	τῇ	ἡμέρᾳ	τῇ	τρίτῃ	γάμος	ἐγένετο
Kai	tē	hēmera	tē	trite	gamos	egeneto
And	the	on day	the	third	wedding	there was

2.4 Function

2.4.1 Describes a noun

The most common use of adjectives is to describe a noun directly. There are two kinds of adjectives that function in this way, attributive adjectives and predicative adjectives.

In Koiné Greek, an `attributive adjective` may come either before or after the noun it describes. Attributive adjectives are usually paired with the definite article, but not always. As state above, attributive adjectives must agree with the noun they describe in gender, case, and number.

Table 9: Matthew 12:35, "The good man from the good treasure"

ὁ	ἀγαθὸς	ἄνθρωπος	ἐκ	τοῦ	ἀγαθοῦ	θησαυροῦ
ho	agathos	anthrōpos	ek	tou	agathou	thēsaurou
the	good	man	out of	the	good	treasure

`Predicative adjectives` are adjectives that describe nouns using a linking verb. Often the linking verb is not present in the Hebrew text and must be supplied when translating into English. Like attributive adjectives, a predicative adjective usually has the same form as the noun it describes in both gender and number. Unlike attributive adjectives, however, a predicative adjective can be indefinite even if it describes a definite noun.

Note: Adjectives that function as predicative adjectives are classified as nouns ("NP") in the UGNT.

Table 10: Matthew 5:3, "Blessed are the poor in spirit"

Μακάριοι		οἱ	πτωχοὶ	τῷ	πνεύματι
makarioi		hoi	ptōchoi	tō	pneumati
Blessed	are	the	poor	the	in spirit

Table 11: John 3:33, "God is true"

ὁ	θεὸς	ἀληθής	ἐστιν
ho	Theos	alēthēs	estin
the	God	true	he is

Table 12: James 1:12, "Blessed is the man who endures testing."

Μακάριος		ἀνὴρ	ὃς	ὑπομένει	πειρασμόν
makarios		anēr	hos	hypomenei	peirasmon
Blessed	is the	man	who	he endures	a trial

2.4.2 Functions as a noun

A `nominal adjective` is an adjective that itself functions as a noun in the sentence rather than describing a noun.

When an adjective itself functions as a noun in a sentence, the adjective is describing some unnamed person or object. It is NOT describing some other noun in the sentence. Therefore, there is no other noun with which the adjective can agree in gender, case, or number. When an adjective functions as a noun, its case word ending is determined by how the word functions within the sentence. Its gender and number word ending is determined by the actual unnamed person or object to which the adjective refers. In Koiné Greek, nominal adjectives are often paired with the definite article, but not always.

Note: Adjectives that function as nominal adjectives are classified as nouns ("NS") in the UGNT.

Table 13: Romans 1:17, "as it has been written, 'But the righteous will live by faith.'"

καθὼς	γέγραπται	ὁ	δὲ	δίκαιος		ἐκ	πίστεως	ζήσεται
kathōs	gegraptai	ho	de	dikaios		ek	pisteōs	zēsetai
as	it has been written	the	but	righteous [man/person]	by	faith	he will live	

2.4.3 Functions as an adverb

An `adverbial adjective` is an adjective that functions as an adverb, meaning that it describes a verb instead of a noun.

When an adjective is used as an adverb, usually the adjective will have the neuter accusative (or sometimes neuter dative) word ending. The most common of these adjectives that used adverbs include: βραχύ ("short"), ἴδιον ("one's own"), μίκρον ("small"), ὀλίγον ("little"), μόνον ("alone"), πολύ ("many"), πρῶτον ("first"), ὕστερον "(second").

Table 14: Matthew 6:33, "But seek first his kingdom"

ζητεῖτε	δὲ	πρῶτον	τὴν	βασιλείαν
zēteite	de	proton	tēn	basileian
you seek	but	first	the	kingdom

2.4.4 Other uses of adjectives

adjectives that compare two or more items

A `comparative adjective` expresses a comparison between two or more items.

In Koiné Greek, a comparative adjective is often formed by adding a specific kind of word ending to the base form of that adjective. These comparative adjective word endings differ according to gender: -τερος (masculine), -τερα (feminine), or -τερον (neuter).

(Some irregular adjectives take the suffixes -(ι)ων or -ον instead.)

Note: Some adjectives use the comparative word ending to indicate a superlative adjective instead. You must always be observant of the context and take it into account when translating an adjective with a comparative word ending.

Table 15: John 13:16, "a servant is not greater than his master"

οὐκ	ἔστιν	δοῦλος	μείζων	τοῦ	κυρίου	αὐτοῦ
ouk	estin	doulos	meizōn	tou	kyriou	autou
not	he is	a slave	greater	than	master	his

adjectives with stronger meaning

An `intensive adjective` has a stronger degree of meaning than a typical adjective.

Note: Sometime both/either comparative and/or superlative word endings can be used to express an intensive meaning to that particular adjective rather than either a comparative meaning or a superlative meaning.

Table 16: Mark 4:1, "and a large crowd gathered around him"

καὶ	συνάγεται	πρὸς	αὐτὸν	ὄχλος	πλεῖστος
kai	synagetai	pros	auton	ochlos	pleistos
and	it is gathered	to	him	crowd	very large

Table 17: Luke 1:3, "most excellent Theophilus"

κράτιστε	Θεόφιλε
kratiste	Theophile
most excellent	Theophilus

adjectives with strongest meaning

A `superlative adjective` has a meaning strengthened to its greatest degree.

In Koiné Greek, a comparative adjective is often formed by adding a specific kind of word ending to the base form of that adjective. These comparative adjective word endings differ according to gender: -τατος (masculine), -τατη (feminine), and -τατον (neuter), OR -ιστος (masculine), -ιστη (feminine), and -ιστον (neuter).

Note: Some adjectives use the superlative word ending to indicate a comparative adjective instead. You must always be observant of the context and take it into account when translating an adjective with a comparative word ending.

Table 18: 1 Corinthians 15:9, For I am the least of the apostles.

ἐγὼ	γάρ	εἰμι	ὁ	ἐλάχιστος	τῶν	ἀποστόλων
egō	gar	eimi	ho	elachistos	tōn	apostolōn
I	for	I am	the	least	of the	apostles

John 10:11					
ἐγώ	εἰμι	ὁ	ποιμὴν	ὁ	καλός
egō	eimi	ho	poimēn	ho	kalos
I	I am	the	shepherd	the	good

I am the good shepherd...

ADJECTIVE ASCRIPTIVE

3.1 Summary

An `ascriptive adjective` is an adjective that functions as an attributive adjective and is NOT paired with the definite article.

3.2 Article

In this grammar, an adjective is classified as "ascriptive" if it is an indefinite adjective (that is, it does NOT take the definite article) and functions attributively.

3.3 Examples

Matthew 7:17 οὕτως πᾶν δένδρον ἀγαθὸν καρποὺς καλοὺς ποιεῖ

Luke 16:19 Ἄνθρωπος δέ τις ἦν πλούσιος

Luke 16:11 εἰ οὖν ἐν τῷ ἀδίκῳ μαμωνᾷ πιστοὶ οὐκ ἐγένεσθε

3.4 TO BE DELETED

Adjectives occur in five basic patterns when modifying a noun:

1. Noun-article adjective or with an article before the noun (article-noun-article-adjective)

2. Article-adjective-noun

3. Article-noun-adjective

4. Adjective-noun

5. Noun-adjective

Patterns 2, 3, 4, and 5, are classified as ascriptive in the Unlocked Greek Grammar.

INCORRECT DEFINITION OF ASCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVE FOR UNLOCKED GREEK GRAMMAR Some resources will describe an adjectival clause as restrictive if it narrows down (or identifies) the noun it is modifying. In other words it directs the reader to a specific person or thing (or persons or things) from a larger group. In contrast an ascriptive adjective provides additional information about a person or thing that has already been clearly identified. For the purposes of the Unlocked Greek Grammar, the terms "ascriptive" and "restrictive"

are NOT being used in this manner. Restrictive adjectives are adjectives that are not functioning as a noun and follow the pattern Noun-Article-Adjective, or (article-noun-article-adjective). All other adjectives are classified as ascriptive if they are not functioning as a noun.

ADJECTIVE RESTRICTIVE

4.1 Summary

A `restrictive adjective` is an adjective that functions as an attributive adjective and IS paired with the definite article

4.2 Article

In this grammar, an adjective is classified as "restrictive" if it is definite (i.e. takes a definite article) and describes a definite noun. The noun may or may not take the definite article.

4.3 Examples

John 10:11 Ἐγώ εἰμι ὁ ποιμὴν ὁ καλός

Luke 16:8 καὶ ἐπήνεσεν ὁ κύριος τὸν οἰκονόμον τῆς ἀδικίας

Matthew 13:8 ἄλλα δὲ ἔπεσεν ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν τὴν καλὴν καὶ ἐδίδου καρπόν

4.4 TO BE DELETED

Adjectives occur in five basic patterns when modifying a noun:

1. Noun-article-adjective or with the article before the noun (article-noun-article-adjective)
2. Article-adjective-noun
3. Article-noun-adjective
4. Adjective-noun
5. Noun-adjective

Pattern 1 is classified as restrictive in the UGNT and UGG. Patterns 2, 3, 4, and 5, are classified as ascriptive in the UGG and the UGNT.

INCORRECT DEFINITION OF RESTRICTIVE ADJECTIVE FOR UNLOCKED GREEK GRAMMAR Some resources will describe an adjectival clause as restrictive if it narrows down (or identifies) the noun it is modifying. In other words it directs the reader to a specific person or thing (or persons or things) from a larger group. In contrast an ascriptive adjective provides additional information about a person or thing that has already been

clearly identified. For the purposes of the Unlocked Greek Grammar, the terms "ascriptive" and "restrictive" are NOT being used in this manner. Restrictive adjectives are adjectives that are not functioning as a noun and follow the pattern Noun-Article-Adjective or with an article before the noun (article-noun-article-adjective) .

ADVERB

5.1 Summary

An `adverb` is a word that describes a verb, or sometimes describes a sentence as a whole.

5.2 Article

In Koiné Greek, adverbs can be formed from any number of different kinds of word endings. However, any one particular adverb usually has only one single form that is always used.

5.3 Describes a verb, adjective, or other adverb

There are several different ways that an adverb can describe a verb.

5.3.1 describes a place or location

A `locative adverb` describes something about the place or location where the action of the verb happens.

Matthew 8:29 ἦλθες ὧδε πρὸ καιροῦ βασανίσαι ἡμᾶς;

Matthew 2:15 καὶ ἦν ἐκεῖ ἕως τῆς τελευτῆς Ἡρῴδου

Mark 15:38 καὶ τὸ καταπέτασμα τοῦ ναοῦ ἐσχίσθη εἰς δύο ἀπ' ἄνωθεν ἕως κάτω.

5.3.2 describes time

A `temporal adverb` describes something about the time when the action of the verb happens.

Mark 10:30 ἐὰν μὴ λάβῃ ἑκατονταπλασίονα νῦν ἐν τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ

Matthew 4:17 Ἀπὸ τότε ἤρξατο ὁ Ἰησοῦς κηρύσσειν καὶ λέγειν

Matthew 17:12 λέγω δὲ ὑμῖν ὅτι Ἠλίας ἤδη ἦλθεν

5.3.3 describes quantity

A `quantitative adverb` describes an amount of something in relation to the action of the verb.

Matthew 2:10 ἰδόντες δὲ τὸν ἀστέρα ἐχάρησαν χαρὰν μεγάλην σφόδρα.

Mark 6:51 καὶ λίαν [bt]ἐκ περισσοῦ ἐν ἑαυτοῖς [bu]ἐξίσταντο

#3

5.3.4 describes manner of action

An `adverb of manner` describes something about how the action of the verb happens.

John 20:4 καὶ ὁ ἄλλος μαθητὴς προέδραμεν τάχιον τοῦ Πέτρου

Matthew 15:7 ὑποκριταί, καλῶς ἐπροφήτευσεν περὶ ὑμῶν Ἠσαΐας

Luke 2:13 καὶ ἐξαίφνης ἐγένετο σὺν τῷ ἀγγέλῳ πλῆθος στρατιᾶς [h]οὐρανίου

#1

#2

#3

#1

#2

#3

#1

#2

#3

5.4 Describes an entire clause or sentence

A `sentential adverb` describes an entire clause or sentence rather than an individual verb. Sentential adverbs are closely related to conjunctions.

Matthew 7:5 καὶ τότε διαβλέψεις ἐκβαλεῖν τὸ κάρφος ἐκ τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σου

Matthew 26:65 ἴδε νῦν ἠκούσατε τὴν [as]βλασφημίαν

#3

Matthew 7:5 ἔκβαλε πρῶτον [b]ἐκ τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ σοῦ τὴν δοκόν

ADVERB CORRELATIVE

6.1 Summary

A `correlative adverb` is an adverbial particle used with a correlative conjunction to join together two different words, phrases, or clauses.

6.2 Article

Correlative particles are used as a pair to join together two different words, phrases, or clauses. The first particle is a correlative adverb. The second particle is a correlative conjunction. For example, consider the sentence, "You may choose either this book or that book." The words "either" and "or" are correlative particles. The word "either" is a correlative adverb. The word "or" is a correlative conjunction. The two correlative particles work together as a join together the two phrases "this book" and "that book."

Table 1: Example: 1 Thessalonians 5:10

..εἴτε γρηγορῶμεν εἴτε καθεύδωμεν ἄμα σὺν αὐτῷ ζήσωμεν
..eite grēgorōmen eite katheudōmen hama syn autō zēsōmen
..whether we are awake or we are asleep together with him we will   live
..whether we are awake or asleep, we may live together with him.

Matthew 9:37 τότε λέγει τοῖς μαθηταῖς αὐτοῦ· Ὁ μὲν θερισμὸς πολύς, οἱ δὲ ἐργάται ὀλίγοι·

Luke 16:13 ἢ γὰρ τὸν ἕνα μισήσει καὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀγαπήσει, ἢ ἑνὸς ἀνθέξεται καὶ τοῦ ἑτέρου καταφρονήσει.

ATTIC

7.1 Glossary

Attic is the Greek dialect spoken by Athenians in the fifth and fourth centuries B.C. It differs from the Hellenistic (or Koine) Greek in which the New Testament was written.

7.2 Article

CASE

8.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, the `case` ending of a word indicates how that term functions within the sentence.

8.2 Article

Koiné Greek uses various kinds of word endings. The term "case" in Koiné refers to one of these varieties of word endings. Case endings in Koiné Greek indicate the function of a word in a sentence. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, and definite articles all require a case ending. Verbs and adverbs do not require a case ending.

There are five different case endings in Koiné Greek: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative.

Generally, the Nominative case indicates the subject of a sentence and other words that describe the subject, such as a predicate nominative or predicate adjective. It is also used for adjectives and participles modifying the subject of the sentence.

Generally, the Genitive case indicates possession. However, the genitive can also be used to indicate many other kinds of relationships between two entities in a sentence. separation or relation. In limited situations, it can also Some prepositions take their complement in the genitive case.

Generally, the Dative case indicates the indirect object of a verb. However, the dative case is also commonly used to express location, means, or agency. Some prepositions take their object in the dative case.

Generally, the Accusative case indicates the Direct Object of a verb. However, the accusative case is also commonly used to express the object of an infinitive. Some prepositions take their object in the accusative case.

The Vocative case indicates the addressee of a speech, that is, the person being spoken to.

8.2.1 Form

The case of a noun, pronoun, adjective, article, or participle is indicated by the case ending (or suffix) attached to the end of the word. These changes follow three basic patterns called "First declension," "Second declension," and "Third declension."

First declension nouns have a feminine gender for the most part and in the nominative singular end in an alpha or an eta. See First Declension . A few masculine nouns end in an -ας or –ης. These words also follow a first declension pattern.

Second declension nouns end in –ος or –ον in the nominative singular. Almost all words ending in –ος in the nominative singular are masculine gender. All words that end in –ον in the nominative singular are neuter gender. See Second Declension .

Third declension nouns have stems that end in a consonant or the vowels (ι, υ, ευ). They are made up of all three genders. See Third Declension .

Adjectives and pronouns agree in case and number with the noun they are modifying (or to which they are referring). Sometimes, the changes may be more significant. [for example the first person singular pronoun ἐγώ in the nominative case changes to μου when it is in the genitive case] See Adjective_paradigm or Pronoun_paradigm .

8.2.2 Order of Words

Because the Greek language has a case system, the order of the words in a sentence can be changed to place an emphasis on a particular word or clause. The normal word order is conjunction – verb – subject – object. When this order is changed there is probably a slight emphasis being made on the words that are moved forward.

Table 1: Example: Satan tempting Jesus

Matthew 4:3											
Εἰ	υἱὸς	εἶ	τοῦ	θεοῦ	εἰπὲ	ἵνα	οἱ	λίθοι	οὗτοι	ἄρτοι	γένωνται.
Ei	huios	ei	tou	theou	eipe	hina	hoi	lithoi	houtoi	artoi	genōntai.
If	son	you are	of	God	order	that	the	stones	these	bread	they become.

If you are the son of God, order that these stones become bread.

Note: In this sentence the phrase "if you are the son of god" has been moved to the first position in the sentence. The movement of the phrase to the front of the sentence places a slight emphasis or stress on the condition.

CASE ACCUSATIVE

9.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, the `accusative` case ending of a word indicates either the direct object of a verb (including participles) or the object of a preposition. It can also be used to indicate the subject of an infinitive verb.

9.2 Article

In Koiné Greek, the accusative case ending indicates the direct object of a verb. This includes both infinitives and participles. Thus, when a participle requires a direct object, that term takes the accusative case ending. The accusative case ending can also indicate the object (or complement) of a preposition. Some infinitives in Koiné Greek take a subject. In these cases, the subject of an infinitive verb takes the accusative case ending. The accusative case ending can also indicate that that word is functioning as an adverb describing the verb.

9.2.1 Form

The Accusative case is formed by adding the accusative case ending to the stem of a word (often with a connecting vowel).

Note: The hyphen (-) indicates that there is no case ending for the third declension accusative singular neuter nouns and adjectives.

See NounParadigm for a complete listing of the noun paradigms and AdjectiveParadigm for the adjective paradigms.

Table 1: Example Mark 1:3

ἑτοιμάσατε	τὴν	ὁδὸν	Κυρίου
hetoimasate	tēn	hodon	Kyriou
prepare	the	way	of the Lord

make ready the way of the Lord

9.2.2 Indicates the direct object

The accusative case most commonly indicates the direct object of a transitive verb. The direct object refers to the person(s) or thing(s) upon which the verb is acting.

Table 2: John 3:16

οὕτως	γὰρ	ἠγάπησεν	ὁ	Θεὸς	τὸν	κόσμον
houtōs	gar	ēgapēsen	ho	Theos	ton	kosmon
thus/so	for	he loved	the	God	the	world
For God so loved the world						

Table 3: Matthew 11:10

ἀποστέλλω	τὸν	ἄγγελόν	μου
apostellō	ton	angelon	mou
I am sending	the	messenger	my
I am sending my messenger			

Table 4: John 1:29

ἴδε	ὁ	Ἀμνὸς	τοῦ	Θεοῦ	ὁ	αἴρων	τὴν	ἁμαρτίαν	τοῦ	κόσμου
ide	ho	Amnos	tou	Theou	ho	airōn	tēn	hamar-tian	tou	kos-mou
Be-hold	the	Lamb	of	God	who	is taking away	the	sin	of the	world
*Look there is the Lamb of God		who takes away the* sin of the world!								

Note: In this example, ἁμαρτίαν * is the dirct object of the participle *αἴρων.

Note: There are some verbs that can take their direct object either in the genitive or in the dative case.

Double Accusative

Some verbs may require two or more objects to complete their meaning. These verbs will require two or more objects, a person (or persons) and/or a thing (or things)in the accusative case to complete their thought. In this case, the translator may wish to use an implied preposition in their translation in order to make a smoother translation.

Table 5: Matthew 1:21

καὶ	καλέσεις	τὸ	ὄνομα	αὐτοῦ	Ἰησοῦν
kai	kaleseis	to	onoma	autou	Iēsoun
and	you will call	the	name	of him	Jesus

and you will call his name Jesus

[In this instance the two objects are ὄνομα and Ἰησοῦν]

Table 6: Example: John 14:26

ἐκεῖνος	ὑμᾶς	διδάξει	πάντα
ekeinos	hymas	didaxei	panta
That one	you	he will teach	all things

he will teach you everything

[This could be translated with the implied preposition; " He will teach to you everything."

Another example of a double accusative is the accusative that is used with an oath. The preposition "by" may be used to assist in the translation.

Table 7: Example: Mark 5:7

ὁρκίζω	σε	τὸν	Θεόν	μή	με	βασανίσῃς
horkizō	se	ton	Theon	mē	me	basanisēs
I implore/beg	you	by	God	not	me	torment

I beg you by God, do not torment me

Note: In this example, σε and με are Accusative Direct Objects.

Object of Certain Prepositions

Certain prepositions take their object in the accusative case such as εἰς, δία, πρός, and ὑπό. Caution: Use the lexicon to determine the meaning of a preposition when it is followed by a word in a particular case.

Often the meaning of the preposition is specific first to the preposition itself and then to the case of the noun it is used with. Therefore, the basic meaning of the case cannot be trusted to arrive at a proper understanding of the meaning of the preposistion and a lexicon must be consulted. In some cases the meaning of the preposition will conform to the basic meaning of the case such as ἀπό with the Genitive case (from, out from) but in other cases such as when ὑπό is used with the accusative case it has the basic meaning of "below" or "under" and when used with the genitive case AND AN ACTIVE VERB ὑπό has the basic meaning of "with" or "by" .

Therefore, a lexicon must be consulted to arrive at the meaning of the preposition. [See - Preposition _.]

Subject of Infinitives

The subject of an infinitive may also be the subject of the sentence. If this is the case, the subject of the sentence (and of the infinitive) will be in the nominative case. If the subject of the infinitive is not the subject of the sentence, it will almost always be in the accusative case. Therefore, the accusative case is considered to be the case for the subject of an infinitive.

Infinitives can have both a subject and an object. If this is the case both will be in the accusative case. In this instance, usually word order and context will clarify which word is the subject and which is the object of the infinitive.

If there are two words in the accusative case, and context by itself does make clear (1) which word is the subject of the infinitive, and (2) which word is the object of the infinitive, then the reader may use the following rule as a helpful guideline.

If one of the two words is a pronoun, proper name, or has the definite article, then it will probably be the subject.

This same basic principle may also be used to help identify the subject from the predicate nominative. [see Nominative-Predicate].

Table 8: Example: John 1:12

ἔδωκεν	αὐτοῖς	ἐξουσίαν	τέκνα	Θεοῦ	γενέσθαι
edōken	autois	exousian	tekna	Theou	genesthai
He gave	to them	authority	children	of God	to be

he gave them the right to become children of God.

[Note: The subject of the infinitive γενέσθαι is τέκνα.]

In the following example a single word serves as the object of a participle and at the same time as the subject of the infinitive. με serves as the object of the participle clause ὁ πέμψας με , and at the same time serves as the subject of the infinitive βαπτίζειν.

Table 9: Example: John 1:33

ὁ	πέμψας	με	βαπτίζειν	ἐν	ὕδατι
ho	pempsas	me	baptizein	en	hydati
he	who sent	me	to baptize	in	water

he who sent me to baptize in water

Table 10: Example: Luke 9:2

καὶ	ἀπέστειλεν	αὐτοὺς	κηρύσσειν	τὴν	Βασιλείαν	τοῦ	Θεοῦ
kai	apesteilen	autous	kēryssein	tēn	Basileian	tou	Theou
and	he sent	them	to preach	the	kingdom	of	God

he sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God

[Note: αὐτοὺς is the subject of the infinitive (κηρύσσειν) and the accusative-direct object for the verb ἀπέστειλεν. Note also that τὴν Βασιλείαν is the object of the infinitive (κηρύσσειν).]

Table 11: Example: John 5:18

μᾶλλον	ἐζήτουν	αὐτὸν	οἱ	Ἰουδαῖοι	ἀποκτεῖναι
mallon	ezētoun	auton	hoi	Ioudaioi	apokteinai
even more	they were seeking	him	the	Jews	to kill

the Jews sought even more to kill him

[Note: οἱ Ἰουδαῖοι is the subject of the sentence and serves at the subject of the infinitive. It is in the nominative case because it is the subject of the sentence.]

Adverbial Accusative

An Adverbial Accusative occurs when an adjective or number in the accusative case is used to quantify (or limit) the action of a verb. Some words such as *μᾶλλον* and *σχεδόν* have become adverbs because of their exclusive use in this manner. An adverbial accusative may be used to express a limitation by indicating:

- the measure or distance of an action (How long? or How far?)

- the time of an action

- the manner of an action

- to indicate a reference point for the action.

Table 12: Example: Mark 12:34 Adverbial Accusative of Measure

εἶπεν	αὐτῷ	οὐ	μακρὰν	εἶ	ἀπὸ	τῆς	Βασιλείας	τοῦ	Θεοῦ
eipen	autō	ou	makran	ei	apo	tēs	Basileias	tou	Theou
he said	to him	not	far	you are	from	the	Kingdom	of	God

he said to him, "You are not far from the kingdom of God."

Table 13: Example: Matthew 20:6 Adverbial Accusative of time

τί	ὧδε	ἑστήκατε	ὅλην	τὴν	ἡμέραν	ἀργοί?
ti	hōde	hestēkate	holēn	tēn	hēmeran	argoi?
Why	here	are you standing	whole	the	day	idle?

'Why do you stand here idle all the day long?'

Table 14: Example: Matt 10:8 Adverbial Accusative of Manner

δωρεὰν	ἐλάβετε	δωρεὰν	δότε
dōrean	elabete	dōrean	dote
freely	you received	freely	you give

Freely you have received, freely give.

Table 15: Example: Romans 10:5 Adverbial Accusative of Reference

Μωϋσῆς	γὰρ	γράφει	τὴν	δικαιοσύνην	τὴν	ἐκ	νόμου
Mōusēs	gar	graphei	tēn	dikaiosynēn	tēn	ek	nomou
Moses	for	he writes	the	with reference to righteousness	the	from	law

For Moses writes about the righteousness that comes from the law:

CASE DATIVE

10.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, the `dative` case ending can serve a wide range of functions. It can indicate the indirect object (or recipient) of a verbal action. It can also express a variety of adverbial meanings, including location, instrument, manner, or relation.

10.2 Article

The Dative case serves three primary functions. It may also indicate the direct object for some verbs

1. Indirect object or personal interest - It serves as the case of personal interest by indicating the indirect object of the verb. It points to whom something was done or for whom something was done. It can also be used to indicate someone or something that is being referred to by the verb, including possession. [See Dative_Indirect Object]

2. Location - It may indicate the location (in place, sphere, or time) of an event. [See Dative_location]

3. Instrumental - It may indicate the means, cause, manner, agent of an action. [See Dative_Instrumental]

4. Direct object- Some verbs take their direct object in the dative case. [See Dative_Direct_Object]

Note: An indirect object is the person(s) or thing(s) toward which the verbal action of a verb or verb form is directed.

10.2.1 Form

Table 1: Example: Luke 24:42

οἱ	δὲ	ἐπέδωκαν	αὐτῷ	ἰχθύος	ὀπτοῦ	μέρος
hoi	de	epedōkan	autō	ichthyos	optou	meros
They	and	they gave	to him	of a fish	broiled	part

They gave him a piece of a broiled fish

The Dative case is formed by adding the Dative case ending to the stem of a word (often with a connecting vowel).

[Note]

- The iota (ι) in the first and second singular declension will often subscript because it is a short vowel.

- The Nu (ν) in the third declension plural is a movable Nu and may or may not be present.

The movable Nu may be present when (1) it appears at the end of a sentence or (2) when the following word begins with a vowel. However, sometimes it appears when the following word begins with a consonant. There is no fixed rule that determines when a moveable Nu will be present. The reader/translator must be aware that it may or may not be present. [For example there are early Greek manuscripts that include or exclude the moveable Nu for Acts 20:34 "καὶ τοῖς οὖσι μετ' ἐμοῦ or καὶ τοῖς οὖσιν μετ' ἐμοῦ."

See NounParadigm for a complete listing of the noun paradigms and AdjectiveParadigm for the adjective paradigms.

10.2.2 Dative – Indirect object /personal interest

The Dative- Indirect object will only occur with a transitive verb. The noun or pronoun in the dative case receives the object of the verb. Example: He hit the ball to Tom. In this example, "ball" is the object of the verb. "Tom" would be in the dative case and receives the object of the verb.

However, if the verb is passive, the word in the dative case will receive the subject of the verb. [See the second example below for further explaination.]

The Dative-Indirect Object/personal Interest is the most common use of the dative case when a preposition is not used. Often, the translator will use the key words "to" or "for" in the translation. As an indirect object, the dative case is used to point out the person "to whom" or "for whom" something is done. If the dative case is treating an object as if it were a person, then the dative case is used to point out the thing "to which" or "for which" something is done.

Table 2: Example: John 6:29

ὁ	Ἰησοῦς	καὶ	εἶπεν	αὐτοῖς
ho	Iēsous	kai	eipen	autois
The	Jesus	and	he said	to them

and Jesus said to them,

Table 3: Example: 2 Corinthians 12:7

ἐδόθη	μοι	σκόλοψ	τῇ	σαρκί
edothē	moi	skolops	tē	sarki
it was given	to me	thorn	in the	flesh

a thorn in the flesh was given to me

Note: In this example the verb (ἐδόθη) is in the passive voice. Σκόλοψ is in the nominative case and is the subject of the sentence. μοι is in the dative case. The word in the dative case μοι receives the subject of the clause (σκόλοψ) which is in the nominative case. "τη σαρκί" is an example of Dative_Locative which is described below. In 2 Corinthians 12:7, Paul receives the "thorn" in his body

Indirect Object of Advantage (or Disadvantage)

A sub-category of the Dative of Indirect Object is the Indirect Object of Advantage or (Disadvantage). It may be to the advantage (or disadvantage) of the person who receives the object. If it is to the persons advantage, it is referred to as the Indirect Object of Advantage. If it is to their disadvantage (or harm), it is referred to as the Indirect Object of Disadvantage.

Example: Indirect Object of Advantage

Table 4: Example John 4:5

πλησίον	τοῦ	χωρίου	ὃ	ἔδωκεν	Ἰακὼβ	τῷ	Ἰωσὴφ
plēsion	tou	chōriou	ho	edōken	Iakōb	tō	Iōsēph
near	the	land	that	he gave	Jacob	to	Joseph

near the piece of land that Jacob had given to Joseph

Example: Indirect object of Disadvantage

Table 5: Example: 1 Corinthians 11:29

ὁ	γὰρ	ἐσθίων	καὶ	πίνων	κρίμα	ἑαυτῷ	ἐσθίει	καὶ	πίνει
ho	gar	esthiōn	kai	pinōn	krima	heautō	esthiei	kai	pinei
the	for	he who is eating	and	he who is drinking	judgment	to himself	he is eating	and	he is drinking

For he who eats and drinks ..., eats and drinks judgment to himself.

Dative of Reference

The Dative of Reference is a subcategory of the Indirect Object of Personal Interest. Sometimes the meaning is better conveyed with a key word; "concerning", "about", "in regard to", "with reference to", or "in respect to". The Dative of Reference is often used when describing the effect of the action on a thing or a personification of something.

Table 6: Example: Romans 6:2

οἵτινες	ἀπεθάνομεν	τῇ	ἁμαρτίᾳ	πῶς	ἔτι	ζήσομεν	ἐν	αὐτῇ?
hoitines	apethanomen	tē	hamartia	pōs	eti	zēsomen	en	autē?
We	we have died	to	sin	how	still	will we live	in	it

We who died to sin, how can we still live in it?

Note: This verse could easily be translated "With reference to sin, we have died." or "in respect to sin"

See also:

Table 7: Romans 6:11

λογίζεσθε	ἑαυτοὺς	εἶναι	νεκροὺς	μὲν	τῇ	ἁμαρτίᾳ	ζῶντας	δὲ	τῷ	Θεῷ
logizesthe	heautous	einai	nekrous	men	tē	hamartia	zōntas	de	tō	Theō
You reckon	yourselves	to be	dead	on the one hand	to	to sin	alive	but	to	to God

you also must consider yourselves to be dead to sin, but alive to God.

Dative of Possession

Possession is a form of personal interest. Therefore, the dative case, in some instances, is used to indicate possession. Possession is generally indicated by use of the genitive case, but in some instances the dative case is used.

Table 8: Example: Luke 1:7

καὶ	οὐκ	ἦν	αὐτοῖς	τέκνον...
kai	ouk	ēn	autois	teknon
and	not	it/there was	to them	a child

But they had no child

Note: In this instance, our smooth translation drops the indirect object of possession. It is awkward to say "And there was not to them a child." The sentence is entirely rephrased to result in a smooth translation.

10.2.3 Dative -Locative (location)

- Locative of place - The dative case may be used to indicate the location (or place) of an object in the physical world.

- Locative of Sphere - When the place is more metaphorical or logical, it is referred to as the Locative of Sphere

- Locative of Time - The dative case may also be used to indicate the location of an object in time.

Example for Locative of place (Note: the place is a physical location - "in a boat")

Table 9: Example: John 21:8

οἱ	δὲ	ἄλλοι	μαθηταὶ	τῷ	πλοιαρίῳ	ἦλθον
hoi	de	alloi	mathētai	tō	ploiariō	ēlthon
the	but	other	disciples	in	a boat	they came

The other disciples came in the boat

Example for Locative of Sphere (Note: the location is metaphorical or logical in nature)

Table 10: Example: Matthew 5:3

μακάριοι	οἱ	πτωχοὶ	τῷ	πνεύματι
makarioi	hoi	ptōchoi	tō	pneumatic
Blessed	the	poor	in	spirit

Blessed are the poor in spirit.

Example for Locative of time

Table 11: John 2:1

καὶ	τῇ	ἡμέρᾳ	τῇ	τρίτῃ	γάμος	ἐγένετο	ἐν	Κανὰ
kai	tē	hēmera	tē	tritē	gamos	egeneto	en	Kana
and	the	day	the	third	a wedding	there was	in	Cana

Three days later, there was a wedding in Cana

Note: In this instance "on the third day" is translated "Three days later..."

10.2.4 Dative – Instrumental

The Dative-Instrumental may be used to indicate the Means, Cause, Manner, or Agent by which an event occurs. The Dative-Instrumental may also be used to indicate an association with the main subject of the action. Making distinctions between Means, Cause, Manner, Agent, or Association can be very difficult and often the choice between one category and another is a matter of personal interpretation.

Instrumental of Means

The Instrumental of Means is used to indicate the means (or the process or method) by which the action of the verb is accomplished.

Table 12: Example: Matthew 8:16

καὶ	ἐξέβαλεν	τὰ	πνεύματα	λόγῳ
kai	exebalen	ta	pneumata	logo
and	he cast out	the	spirit	with a word

He drove out the spirits with a word

Instrumental of Cause

The Instrumental of Cause is used to indicate the cause, the motivating event, or reason something occurred. Therefore, the key word "because" may help in translation.

Table 13: Example: Romans 11:20

τῇ	ἀπιστίᾳ	ἐξεκλάσθησαν
tē	apistia	exeklasthēsan
because (of)	unbelief	they were broken off

Because of their unbelief they were broken off

Instrumental of Manner

The Instrumental of Manner is used to indicate the method or manner used to accomplish something. This is very closely related to the Instrumental of Means.

Table 14: Example: 1 Corinthians 11:5

πᾶσα	δὲ	γυνὴ	προσευχομένη	ἢ	προφητεύουσα	ἀκατακαλύπτῳ	τῇ	κεφαλῇ
pasa	de	gynē	proseuchomenē	ē	prophēteuousa	akatakalyptō	tē	kephalē
every	but	woman	who prays	or	who prophecies	with uncovered	the	head

But every woman who prays or prophesies with her head uncovered

Instrumental of Agent

The Instrumental of Agent is used with a verb in the middle or passive voice to express the agent or person by which an action is accomplished. Agency may also be expressed by using the preposition ὑπὸ with the genitive case or δία with the accusative case.

Table 15: Example: Galatians 5:18

εἰ	δὲ	Πνεύματι	ἄγεσθε
ei	de	Pneumati	agesthe
if	but	by Spirit	you are led

But if you are led by the Spirit

Instrumental of Association

The Instrumental of Association is used to indicate an association, relation, or affiliation of some kind with the subject carrying out the action of the verb.

Table 16: Example: Mark 2:15

πολλοὶ	τελῶναι	καὶ	ἁμαρτωλοὶ	συνανέκειντο	τῷ	Ἰησοῦ	καὶ	τοῖς	μαθηταῖς	αὐτοῦ
pol-loi	telōnai	kai	hamartōloi	synanekeinto	tō	Iē-sou	kai	tois	mathē-tais	autou
many	tax collec-tors	and	sinners	they were reclining at table	with	Je-sus	and	with	disci-ples	of him

many tax collectors and sinners were dining with Jesus and his disciples

10.2.5 Dative-Direct object

Certain verbs take their object in the dative case. This often happens with verbs that indicate some sort of personal relation to the action.

The following is a list of 47 verbs that may take their object in the dative case:

Table 17: Verbs that use Dative case for Direct Object

ἀκολοθέω (to follow)	ἀνθομολογέομαι (to praise)	ἀνίστημι (to resist)
ἀντιπίπτω (to resist)	ἀντιτάσσω (to resist)	ἀπιστέω (to disbelieve)
ἀρέσκω (to please)	βοηθέω (to help)	διακατελέγχομαι (to refute)
διακονέω (to serve)	διαμαρτύρομαι (to warn)	διαστέλλω (to order)
διατάσσω (to instruct)	διδάσκω (to teach)	δουλεύω (to serve)
ἐγκαλέω (to accuse)	ἐμβριμάομαι (to rebuke)	ἐξακολουθέω (to follow)
ἐξομολογέω (to praise)	ἐπιπλήσσω (to rebuke)	ἐπιτάσσω (to command)
ἐπιτιμάω (to warn)	ἐπισκιάζω (to cover)	εὐχαριστέω (to thank)
κοινωνέω (to share)	λατρεύω (to serve)	μετριοπαθέω (to deal gently)
ὁμολογέω (to profess)	ὀργίζω (to be angry at)	παραγγέλλω (to command)
παρακολολουθέω (to follow)	παρενοχλέω (to trouble)	πείθω (to obey)
πιστεύω (to believe)	προσκυνέω (to worship)	προστάσσω (to command)
προσψαύω (to touch)	συλλαμβάννω (to help)	συμβουλεύω (to advise)
συνακολουθέω (to follow)	συνεργέω (to assist)	συνευδοκέω (to approve)
ὑπακούω (to obey)	ὑπηρετέω (to serve)	χαρίζομαι (to forgive)
χράομαι (to make use of)	ψάλλω (to sing praise to)	

Table 18: Example: Luke 16:28

ὅπως	διαμαρτύρηται	αὐτοῖς
hopōs	diamartyrētai	autois
so that	he could warn	them

in order that he might warn them

ELEVEN

CASE GENITIVE

11.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, the `genitive` case ending serves a wide variety of functions. Most commonly, it expresses possession, meaning that the term containing the genitive case ending possesses (in some way) the word it describes. However, it can also express other meanings as well.

11.2 Article

In Koiné Greek, the genitive case ending has potential to express the widest range of meanings of all the various case endings. The genitive case ending can express possession, description, kinship, apposition, separation, the subject of a verbal idea, the object of a verbal idea, and others. Often, a specific word with a genitive case ending may seem to fit into more than one category. In these cases, the final determination of the meaning must be based upon context.

John 1:19						
καὶ	αὕτη	ἐστὶν	ἡ	μαρτυρία	τοῦ	Ἰωάννου
kai	hautē	estin	hē	martyria	tou	Iōannou
and	this	it is	the	testimony	of the	John

This is the testimony of John; or This is John's testimony

In this example, the relationship expressed is that of possession and/or source.

11.2.1 Form

The Genitive case is formed by adding the Genitive case ending to the stem of a word (often with a connecting vowel). Usually, the word in the Genitive case usually follows the word that it is modifying. When the word in the Genitive case occurs before the word it is modifying, the word in the Genitive case is being given more attention by the author.

See NounParadigm for a complete listing of the noun paradigms and AdjectiveParadigm for the adjective paradigms.

11.2.2 Possession

A word with a `possession` genitive case ending owns or possesses (in some way) the object that is being described. This kind of genitive is often translated into English using the word "of."

need example here

However, the most common way a speaker/writer expresses possession is by using a personal pronoun in the genitive case. In these cases, the personal pronoun is translated into English using English possessive pronouns ("my," "your," "their," etc.).

John 20:28											
ἀπεκρίθη	Θωμᾶς	καὶ	εἶπεν	αὐτῷ	ὁ	Κύριός	μου	καὶ	ὁ	Θεός	μου!
apekrithē	Thōmas	kai	eipen	autō	ho	Kyrios	mou	kai	ho	Theos	mou!
he answered	Thomas	and	he said	to him	the	Lord	my	and	the	God	my
*Thomas answered and said to him	• "My Lord and my God."										

Sometimes a possessive pronoun is used to express possession. Some common possessive pronouns in Koiné Greek include ἐμός ("my"), σός ("your"), ἡμέτερος ("our"), ὑμέτερος ("your"), or ἴδιος ("his") are sometimes used In these cases, the possessive pronouns will look like any other adjective and will agree with the noun they are describing in case and gender.

11.2.3 Attributive

A word with an `attributive` genitive case ending functions very much like a typical adjective. The word with the genitive case ending expresses some general attribute (or description) of the word it is describing. This kind of genitive is often translated into English using the word "of."

Mark 1:4								
ἐγένετο	Ἰωάννης		...	κηρύσσων	βάπτισμα	μετανοίας	εἰς	ἄφεσιν	ἁμαρτιῶν
egeneto	Iōannēs		...	kēryssōn	baptisma	metanoias	eis	aphesin	hamartiōn
he came	John		preaching	a baptism	of repentance	into/for	forgiveness	of sin
*John came	... preaching a baptism* of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.							

11.2.4 Material

A word with a `material` genitive case ending indicates either (1) the substance of which an object is made or (2) something which an object contains. In both cases, the "object" is the word being described by the term containing the genitive case ending. This kind of genitive is often translated into English using the words "of," "with," or "by."

Acts 2:4				
καὶ	ἐπλήσθησαν	πάντες	Πνεύματος	Ἁγίου
kai	eplēsthēsan	pantes	Pneumatos	Hagiou
and	they were filled	all	with Spirit	Holy

They were all filled with the Holy Spirit

11.2.5 Kinship

A word with a `kinship` genitive case ending describes some kind of kinship relationship. In most cases, this kind of genitive refers someone who is the physical descendent (son or daughter) of another person. However, it can refer to someone who is a descendant several generations later, or even someone who is a descendant in a relational sense and not a physical sense. For example, in Luke 13:16 the woman is called a "daughter of Abraham" even though many centuries had passed since Abraham died. The woman was still considered to be a daughter of Abraham. This kind of genitive is often translated into English using the word "of."

Matthew 4:21				
Ἰάκωβον	τὸν		τοῦ	Ζεβεδαίου
Iakōbon	ton		tou	Zebedaiou
James	the	(son)	of	Zebedee
James the son of Zebedee				

Luke 24:10				
καὶ	Μαρία	ἡ		Ἰακώβου
kai	Maria	hē		Iakōbou
and	Mary	the	(mother of)	James
and Mary the mother of James				

11.2.6 Apposition

A word with an `apposition` genitive case ending describes in some way the preceding word (which also has a genitive case ending). It functions very much like an adjective, except it is usually not an adjective, but a noun instead. Apposition is the term used when a noun describes (or gives more information about) another noun. This kind of genitive can be translated into English a variety of different ways, depending on the specific context. Some common ways of translation an apposition genitive into English include "who is," "which is," "namely," a simple comma, or sometimes not translated at all. In the example below, the noun "mother" is in genitive case and is in apposition to the noun "Mary." The apposition genitive indicates that Mary is the mother of the child specified in the sentence.

Matthew 2:11							
εἶδον	τὸ	παιδίον	μετὰ	Μαρίας	τῆς	μητρὸς	αὐτοῦ
eidon	to	paid-ion	meta	Marias	tēs	mētros	autou
they saw	the	child	with	Mary	the	mother	of him.
They saw the young child with Mary his mother.							

11.2.7 Separation/Source (or Ablative)

A word with a `separation/source` genitive case ending indicates some kind of separation from, movement away from, or the source of some object. Some grammars call this specific kind of genitive case ending the "ablative" case ending. However, there is no difference in form between the "genitive" case ending and the "ablative" case ending. They appear exactly the same. As might be expected, the prepositions ἐκ ("out of") and ἀπό ("from") require their object to have the genitive case ending. This kind of genitive can also be used to express a comparison between two objects (as a function of a "separation" of the two objects in view).

2 Corinthians 3:3			
ὅτι	ἐστὲ	ἐπιστολὴ	Χριστοῦ
hoti	este	epistolē	Christou
because	you are	a letter	from Christ

that you are a letter from Christ

Matthew 2:1					
μάγοι	ἀπὸ	ἀνατολῶν	παρεγένοντο	εἰς	Ἱεροσόλυμα
magoi	apo	anatolōn	paregenonto	eis	Hierosolyma
Magi	from	(the) east	they came	into	Jerusalem

learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem

Luke 19:8									
τὰ	ἡμίσιά		μου	τῶν	ὑπαρχόντων	Κύριε	τοῖς	πτωχοῖς	δίδωμι
ta	hēmisia		mou	tōn	hyparchontōn	Kyrie	tois	ptō-chois	didōmi
the	half		of my	of	possessions/ goods	Lord	to the	poor	I give
*Lord	the half of my* goods I give to the poor								

Note: In this example "of goods" is a Genitive of Source. "My" is a Genitive of possession.

John 13:16						
οὐκ	ἔστιν	δοῦλος	μείζων	τοῦ	κυρίου	αὐτοῦ
ouk	estin	doulos	meizōn	tou	kyriou	autou
not	he is	a slave	greater	than	lord	his
a servant is not greater than his master						

Note: In this example we see the comparative function for the Genitive of Separation.

11.2.8 Subject/Object

A word with a `subject/object` genitive case ending indicates either the subject or object of a verbal idea. In the example below, the word *παρουσία* ("coming") refers to a verbal idea. The subject of this verbal idea is τοῦ Υἱοῦ ("the Son"). The genitive case ending for the term τοῦ Υἱοῦ indicates that "the Son" is the one who is "coming."

Matthew 24:27							
οὕτως	ἔσται	ἡ	παρουσία	τοῦ	Υἱοῦ	τοῦ	Ἀνθρώπου
houtōs	estai	hē	parousia	tou	Huiou	tou	Anthrōpou
thus	it will be	the	coming	of the	Son	of	Man
so will be the coming of the Son of Man							

In the example below, the term *τὸ μαρτύριον* refers to the verbal idea of "testifying." The object of this verbal idea is τοῦ Χριστοῦ ("the Christ"). The genitive case ending for the term indicates the "the Christ" is the one about whom someone is "testifying."

1 Corinthians 1:6							
καθὼς		τὸ	μαρτύριον τοῦ	Χριστοῦ	ἐβεβαιώθη	ἐν	ὑμῖν
kathōs		to	mar-tyrion	tou Chris-tou	ebebaiōthē	en	hymin
just as		the	testi-mony	of Christ	has been confirmed	in	you
just as the testimony about Christ has been con-firmed [as true] among you							

The Genitive case is primarily the case of description.

1. The Genitive case may be used to attribute

   - a basic quality to the noun, or [see Genitive-Attributive]

   - to show the material from which it was formed or material that it contains. [see Genitive_Material]

2. The Genitive case may also express a relationship to the subject noun (or substantive-a substantive is a noun or any word or group of words functioning like a noun)

   - of kinship, [see Genitive_Kinship]

   - possession, [see Genitive_Possession]

   - apposition, or [see Genitive_Apposition]

   - separation (or source). [see Genitive_Separation]

3. A word in the genitive case may also serve as the subject or object of the head noun. [see Genitive_Subject/Object]

CASE NOMINATIVE

12.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, the `nominative` case ending usually indicates the subject of the sentence. However, the nominative case ending can also indicate a predicate nominative or predicate adjective.

12.2 Article

In Koiné Greek, the nominative case ending indicates the subject of a sentence. Any adjectives or participles that describe the subject of the sentence also take the nominative case ending. In a sentence with a linking verb, the nominative case ending can indicate the predicate nominative or predicate adjective.

The nominative case ending is the standard form used for dictionary entries in a Greek lexicon.

12.3 Form

The nominative case is formed by adding the nominative case ending to the stem of a word (often with a connecting vowel).

Note:

- The hyphen (-) indicates there is no case ending for feminine singular first and second declension nouns.
- There is no case ending for third declension neuter singular nouns, but the final stem letter may undergo changes.

See NounParadigm for a complete listing of the noun paradigms and AdjectiveParadigm for the adjective paradigms.

12.3.1 Indicates the subject of a sentence

The primary use of the nominative case ending is to identify the subject of the sentence. When the subject is paired with the definite article, the definite article will also take the nominative case ending.

John 11:35		
ἐδάκρυσεν	ὁ	Ἰησοῦς
edakrysen	ho	Iēsous
he wept	the	Jesus
Jesus wept.		

John 3:35					
ὁ		Πατὴρ	ἀγαπᾷ	τὸν	Υἱόν
ho		Patēr	agapa	ton	huion
the		Father	he loves	the	Son
The Father loves the Son.					

When an adjective or participle functions as the subject of the sentence, it will take the nominative case ending.

Romans 1:17					
ὁ	δὲ	δίκαιος	ἐκ	πίστεως	ζήσεται.
ho	de	dikaios	ek	pisteōs	zēsetai.
the	indeed	righteous	by	faith	he will live.
*But	the* righteous will live by faith.				

Any adjectives or participles that describe the subject of a sentence will also take the nominative case ending. This is because adjectives and participles must agree with the term that they describe in case as well as gender and number. In the example below, the adjective (καλός) and the noun (ποιμὴν) both take the nominative case ending.

John 10:11										
ὁ		ποιμὴν	ὁ	καλὸς	τὴν	ψυχὴν	αὐτοῦ	τίθησιν	ὑπὲρ	τῶν	προβάτων
ho		poimēn	ho	ka-los	tēn	psy-chēn	autou	tithēsin	hyper	tōn	pro-batōn
the		shep-herd	the	good	the	life	of him	he lays down	in be-half of	the	sheep
The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.										

In the example below, the participle (βλέπων) and the noun (Πατήρ) both take the nominative case ending.

Matthew 6:6									
ὁ		Πατήρ	σου	ὁ	βλέπων	ἐν	τῷ	κρυπτῷ	ἀποδώσει	σοι.
ho		patēr	sou	ho	blepōn	en	tō	kryptō	apodōsei	soi.
the		Fa-ther	of you	who	is see-ing	in	the	se-cret	he will re-ward	to you
your Father who sees in secret will reward you									

Sometimes a writer may not intend to form a complete sentence. This may occur in titles, headings, the greeting of a letter, or when a writer wishes to express strong emotion. In cases like these, there is often a subject to the sentence fragment but no predicate and no verb. The subject of these kinds of sentence fragments will take the nominative case ending.

Jude 1						
Ἰούδας	Ἰησοῦ	Χριστοῦ	δοῦλος	ἀδελφὸς	δὲ	Ἰακώβου
Ioudas	Iēsou	Christou	doulos	adelphos	de	Iakōbou
Jude	of Jesus	of Christ	a slave	brother	and	of James
Jude	*a servant of Jesus Christ	and brother of James*				

Romans 11:33							
ὦ	βάθος	πλούτου	καὶ	σοφίας	καὶ	γνώσεως	Θεοῦ
ō	bathos	ploutou	kai	sophias	kai	gnōseōs	theou
Oh	depth	of riches	both	of wisdom	and	of knowledge	of God.
Oh	the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!						

12.3.2 Indicates a predicate nominative or predicate adjective

Sentences with linking verbs (such as εἰμί, γίνομαι, and ὑπάρχω) do not take a typical predicate containing an active verb with a direct object, etc. When a linking verb requires a predicate, that predicate will contain some kind of predicate nominative (either a noun or a participle functioning as a noun) or predicate adjective (either an adjective or a participle functioning as an adjective). In these cases, the predicate nominative or predicate adjective will take the nominative case ending.

Unlike in English, a linking verb in Koiné Greek can be implied and not explicitly stated.

are completed with an object in nominative case. The Nominative-Predicate (also referred to as Predicate Nominative) construction can take different forms but consists of a subject + a linking verb + an object in the nominative case. [The linking verb may be implied and not actually present in the text.]

Note: Use caution when translating sentences with predicate nominatives. It is often difficult to tell which term is the subject and which term is the predicate nominative, but they are not the same thing. They must be distinguished from one another.Care must be used in the translation of a Nominative-Predicate because the object may not be in the last position and is often not an exact equivalent of the subject. Koiné Greek does not use position to distinguish between the subject and the predicate nominative. The predicate nominative may appear either before or after the subject. The predicate nNominative is generally the larger class of objects, while the subject is the smaller class.

12.3.3 Indicates apposition

In Koiné Greek, the nominative case ending can be used to indicate a term that is in apposition to another word (usually a noun). It functions very much like an adjective, except it is usually not an adjective, but a noun instead. "Apposition" is the term used when a noun describes (or gives more information about) another noun. Appositions can be translated into English a variety of different ways, depending on the specific context. Some common ways of translating an apposition into English include "who is," "which is," "namely," a simple comma, or sometimes not translated at all. In the example below, the terms ὁ μάρτυς and ὁ πρωτότοκος both take the nominative case ending and are in apposition to Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ (even though Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ takes the genitive case ending). The apposition indicates that Jesus Christ is the person whom the writer indicates is the faithful witness and the firstborn from the dead.

Revelation 1:5									
καὶ	ἀπὸ	Ἰησοῦ	Χριστοῦ ὁ	μάρτυς ὁ	πιστός ὁ	πρωτότοκος τῶν	νεκρῶν...		
kai	apo	Iēsou	Chris-tou ho	mar-tys ho	pis-tos ho	prō-to-tokos	tōn	nekrōn...	
and	from	Jesus	Christ the	wit-ness the	faith-ful the	first-born	from the	dead...	
*and from Jesus Christ	the faith-ful* witness	the firstborn from the dead...							

Consider the sentence, "Paul is a man."

"Paul" is the subject and "man" is the Nominative-Predicate. The translator must be careful to first understand the passage and then take equal care in the translation to make sure the reader understands that Paul is the subject and man is the Nominative-Predicate. English uses word order to indicate which word is the subject and which word is the Predicate Nominative. Therefore reversing the word order in English to say "a man is Paul" would lead the reader to think that all men are "Paul" which is not true. The more definite of the two words (or clauses) in the nominative case will be the subject of the sentence.

The following basic rules will help to clarify which word (or clause) is the subject of the sentence and which word (or clause) is the predicate nominative for the sentence in Koine Greek.

NOTE: In Koine Greek, the linking verb may be omitted entirely, and may have to be supplied by the reader (or translator) to complete the sentence. (an example of this will be given below.)

As stated above, the more definite of the two nominatives will be the subject of the sentence. Therefore...

1) if only one of the words in the nominative case is a pronoun, then the pronoun will be the subject. The pronoun may be included as a part of the verb.

Matthew 5:14					
ὑμεῖς	ἐστε	τὸ	φῶς	τοῦ	κόσμου.
hymeis	este	to	phōs	tou	kosmou.
you	you are	the	light	of the	world.

You are the light of the world.

When Jesus spoke to the crowd and said "you", they had a clear understanding of who the "you" was referring to. It was referring to them. "You" is the subject. "The light" is the predicate nominative.

Matthew 14:33			
ἀληθῶς	Θεοῦ	Υἱὸς	εἶ
alēthōs	theou	huios	ei
truly	of God	Son	you are

Truly you are the Son of God.

In this sentence, the subject "you" is included in the verb εἶ. Υἱὸς is the predicate nominative.

2) If only one of the words in the nominative case is preceded with the article, the word with the article is the subject.

John 1:1				
καὶ	Θεὸς	ἦν	ὁ	λόγος
kai	theos	ēn	ho	logos
and	God	was	the	word

and the Word was God

John 1:14				
καὶ	ὁ	λόγος	σὰρξ	ἐγένετο
kai	ho	logos	sarx	egeneto
and	the	word	flesh	it became

The Word became flesh

3) If only one of the words in the nominative case is a proper name, the proper name will be the subject.

James 5:17				
Ἠλείας	ἄνθρωπος	ἦν	ὁμοιοπαθὴς	ἡμῖν
Eleias	anthrōpos	ēn	homoiopathēs	hemin
Elijah	a man	he was	like/or with a nature like	us

Elijah was a man just like us.

Notice that in this example both the subject (Ἠλείας) and the predicate nominative (ἄνθρσπος) come before the verb.

4) If one of the nouns in the nominative case is a pronoun and one is a proper name, the pronoun will be the subject and the proper name will be the predicate nominative.

Matthew 16:20			
αὐτός	ἐστιν	ὁ	Χριστός
autos	estin	ho	Christos
he	he is	the	Christ

He is the Christ.

Matthew 11:14		
αὐτός	ἐστιν	Ἠλείας
autos	estin	Eleias
he	he is	Elijah

He is Elijah

5) If...

   a. both have the article or

   b. both are proper names or

   c. one has the article and the other is a proper name,

      ...then the one that comes first is the subject.

John 15:1					
ὁ	Πατήρ	μου	ὁ	γεωργός	ἐστιν.
ho	Patēr	mou	ho	geōrgos	estin
the	Father	my	the	farmer/gardener	he is

My Father is the gardener

6) Some times εις + accusative is used for the predicate nominative. This may occur with γίνομαι, εἰμί, or λογίζομαι. This portrays a process of something "changing into" something else. In English, it is translated with a predicate nominative and the εἰς is not translated. [D R A F T]

Mark 10:8						
καὶ	ἔσονται	οἱ	δύο	**εἰς	σάρκα**	μίαν
kai	esontai	hoi	dyo	**eis	sarka**	mian
and	they will become	the	two		flesh	one

and the two will become one flesh

CASE VOCATIVE

13.1 Glossary

Vocative is the case used when addressing (speaking directly to) someone.

Table 1: Example: MAT 8:2

Κύριε	ἐὰν	θέλῃς	δύνασαί	με	καθαρίσαι
Kyrie	ean	thelēs	dynasai	me	katharisai
Lord	if	willing	you are able	me	to make clean

Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean

13.2 Article

The vocative case is the case of direct address.

- However, a noun in the vocative case preceded by the particle ὦ is used to add emphasis or to express emotion.
- Caution: Do not confuse ὦ (the particle) with ᾧ -the dative case relative pronoun, or with ὦ - the first person singular subjunctive form of εἰμί (which is identical to the particle ὦ in form).

Only 2.1% of the 28,599 nouns in the New Testament are in the vocative case.

13.2.1 Form

1. Often it is easy to identify nouns in the vocative case by the context.

2. The vocative case is identical to the nominative case in the plural.

3. The vocative case is identical to the nominative case in the first declension (singular and plural).

4. The vocative case of the singular second declension usually ends in an epsilon.

5. The vocative case of the singular third declension is usually the bare stem of the word. However, the stem vowel may shorten, lengthen, or drop out entirely. This is known as ablaut.

13.2.2 Vocative – Direct Address

The vocative of direct address is the most frequent use of the vocative case.

Matthew 7:21												
οὐ	πᾶς	ὁ	λέγων	μοι	Κύριε	Κύριε	εἰσελεύσεται	εἰς	τὴν	Βασιλείαν	τῶν	Οὐρανῶν
ou	pas	ho	legōn	moi	Kyrie	Kyrie	eiseleuse-tai	eis	tēn	Basileian	tōn	Ouranōn
not	every-one	who	says	to me	Lord	Lord	he will enter	into	the	king-dom	of	heaven

Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord', will enter into the kingdom of heaven

Matthew 8:2					
Κύριε	ἐὰν	θέλῃς	δύνασαί	με	καθαρίσαι.
Kyrie	ean	thelēs	dynasai	me	katharisai.
Lord	if	you are willing	you are able	me	to (make) clean

"Lord", if you are willing, you can make me clean.

13.2.3 Vocative – Emphasis/Emotion

The vocative case can also be used to express emotion or emphasis. The particle ὦ is used when the vocative case is used to add additional emphasis or emotion to the basic function of direct address. ὦ followed by a word in the vocative case only occurs 14 times in the New Testament.

Example of ὦ + vocative to add an emotional emphasis.

Mark 9:19									
αὐτοῖς	λέγει	ὦ	γενεὰ	ἄπιστος!	ἕως	πότε	πρὸς	ὑμᾶς	ἔσομαι?
autois	legei	ō	genea	apistos!	heōs	pote	pros	hymas	esomai?
to them	he says	Oh	generation	unbelieving	until	when	with	you	will I be?

and he said to them, "You unbelieving generation! How long will I be with you?"

Note: The emotional emphasis can be difficult to reflect in a translation. The exclaimation mark is used in this example to reflect the emotion.

Example of ὦ + vocative to add emphasis.

I Timothy 6:11									
σὺ	δέ	ὦ	ἄνθρωπε	Θεοῦ	ταῦτα	φεῦγε	δίωκε	δὲ	δικαιοσύνην...
sy	de	ō	an-thrōpe	Theou	tauta	pheuge	diōke	de	dikaiosynēn...
you	but	o	man	of God	these things	you flee	you pur-sue	but (in-stead)	righteous-ness

But you, man of God, flee from these things. Instead, pursue righteousness...

Note: The emphasis is lost in the English text.

COMPARATIVE

14.1 Glossary

Adjectives can have three degrees, called positive (e.g., good), comparative (e.g., better) and superlative (e.g., best).

Better is in the ** degree** since it is making a comparison between two things.

Table 1: Example: LUK 5:39

ὁ παλαιὸς χρηστός ἐστιν
ho palaios chrēstos estin
the old better it is
the old is better

14.2 Article

CONJUNCTION

15.1 Summary

A `conjunction` is a word that shows a relationship between two different words, phrases, sentences, or even entire paragraphs. In other words, conjunctions are grammatical connectors. The most common conjunctions in English are "and," "or," "but," and "for." Conjunctions are closely related to both sentential adverbs and particles.

15.2 Article

Koiné Greek contains many conjunctions, but the two most common conjunctions in the New Testament are καὶ ("and, also") and δε ("but, and"). Sometimes in Koiné Greek conjunctions are combined with other words (called "krasis") to form compound terms. These are not the same as compound conjunctions. .. include:: includes/compound_terms.rst

There are eight major categories of conjunctions. There are others as well, but these are the main kinds of conjunctions: conjunctive ("and"); alternative ("or"); contrastive ("but"); explicative ("surely"); causal ("for"); conditional ("if"); concessive ("except"); restrictive ("only").

15.2.1 Form

Conjunctions in Koiné Greek can appear as stand-alone words or be combined with other words to form a compound term.

Compound conjunctions

A compound conjunction is formed from two separate conjunctions that appear together at the beginning of a sentence. .. include:: en_uhg/content/includes/compound_terms.rst .. include:: en_uhg/content/includes/notes/conjunction-compound.rst

15.2.2 Function

Conjunctions can express any of the following connective relationships. This is not a complete list, but it represents the major categories of meaning for conjunctions in Koiné Greek.

Conjunctive

A `conjunctive` conjunction simply joins two words/phrases/sentences together and is usually translated as "and" in English. This kind of conjunction can be used either comparatively (joining similar ideas) or contrastively (joining dissimilar ideas).

Matthew 16:5 Καὶ ἐλθόντες οἱ [d]μαθηταὶ εἰς τὸ πέραν ἐπελάθοντο ἄρτους λαβεῖν.

Matthew 16:13 Ἐλθὼν δὲ ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἰς τὰ μέρη Καισαρείας τῆς Φιλίππου

Alternative

An `alternative` conjunction compares two words/phrases/sentences as alternates and is usually translated as "or" in English.

Matthew 5:35 ὅτι πόλις ἐστὶν τοῦ μεγάλου βασιλέως

Mark 12:14 ἔξεστιν [p]δοῦναι κῆνσον Καίσαρι ἢ οὔ; δῶμεν ἢ μὴ δῶμεν;

Mark 13:35 οὐκ οἴδατε γὰρ πότε ὁ κύριος τῆς οἰκίας ἔρχεται, [au]ἢ ὀψὲ ἢ [av]μεσονύκτιον ἢ ἀλεκτοροφωνίας ἢ πρωΐ

Contrastive

A `contrastive` conjunction contrasts two words/phrases/sentences as different in some way and is usually translated as "but" in English.

Matthew 6:6 σὺ δὲ ὅταν προσεύχῃ, εἴσελθε εἰς τὸ ταμεῖόν σου καὶ κλείσας τὴν θύραν σου

Acts 1:8 ἀλλὰ λήμψεσθε δύναμιν ἐπελθόντος τοῦ ἁγίου πνεύματος ἐφ' ὑμᾶς

15.2.3 Causal

A `causal` conjunction expresses a relationship of cause (of some kind) between two grammatical items. These can include a relationship of reason or result as well as a relationship of purpose or goal. However, sometimes it is extremely difficult to distinguish between a causal conjunction that expresses purpose/goal and one that expresses reason/result.

Romans 3:28 λογιζόμεθα [k]γὰρ [l]δικαιοῦσθαι πίστει ἄνθρωπον χωρὶς ἔργων νόμου.

Acts 1:5 ὅτι Ἰωάννης μὲν ἐβάπτισεν ὕδατι, ὑμεῖς δὲ [b]ἐν πνεύματι βαπτισθήσεσθε ἁγίῳ

expresses reason or result

This kind of causal conjunction expresses either the reason for or the result of an action/event. In English, it is usually translated as "for" or "because".

Matthew 1:22 τοῦτο δὲ ὅλον γέγονεν ἵνα πληρωθῇ τὸ ῥηθὲν [k]ὑπὸ κυρίου διὰ τοῦ προφήτου

Romans 1:11 ἐπιποθῶ γὰρ ἰδεῖν ὑμᾶς, ἵνα τι μεταδῶ χάρισμα ὑμῖν πνευματικὸν

Luke 1:34 Πῶς ἔσται τοῦτο, ἐπεὶ ἄνδρα οὐ γινώσκω;

expresses purpose or goal

This kind of causal conjunction expresses the purpose for or intended outcome of an action/event. In English, it is usually translated as "for" or "so that".

Luke 1:44 Μὴ φοβοῦ, Μαριάμ, εὗρες γὰρ χάριν παρὰ τῷ θεῷ·

Matthew 2:18 Ῥαχὴλ κλαίουσα τὰ τέκνα αὐτῆς, καὶ οὐκ ἤθελεν παρακληθῆναι ὅτι οὐκ εἰσίν

Luke 1:13 Μὴ φοβοῦ, Ζαχαρία, διότι εἰσηκούσθη ἡ δέησίς σου

15.2.4 Conditional

A `conditional` conjunction introduces either a hypothetical situation or an actual situation, as determined by the context.

Luke 16:31 Εἰ Μωϋσέως καὶ τῶν προφητῶν οὐκ ἀκούουσιν, οὐδ᾽ ἐάν τις ἐκ νεκρῶν ἀναστῇ πεισθήσονται.

#2

#3

expresses a hypothetical condition

A `hypothetical condition` expresses an imaginary action or event that has not actually happened in reality. This kind of conditional conjunction is usually translated as "if" in English. Hypothetical conditions have potential to convey many different nuances of possibility and/or desirability.

Luke 17:2 λυσιτελεῖ αὐτῷ εἰ [d]λίθος μυλικὸς περίκειται περὶ τὸν τράχηλον αὐτοῦ καὶ ἔρριπται εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἢ ἵνα σκανδαλίσῃ [e]τῶν μικρῶν τούτων ἕνα.

Luke 17:6 Εἰ ἔχετε πίστιν ὡς κόκκον σινάπεως, ἐλέγετε ἂν τῇ συκαμίνῳ ταύτῃ·

Matthew 11:21 ὅτι εἰ ἐν Τύρῳ καὶ Σιδῶνι ἐγένοντο αἱ δυνάμεις αἱ γενόμεναι ἐν ὑμῖν, πάλαι ἂν ἐν σάκκῳ καὶ σποδῷ μετενόησαν.

expresses an actual condition

An `actual condition` expresses an action or event that has actually happened in reality, and is usually translated as "when" or "while" in English. Usually, this kind of condition indicates something that is happening concurrently with the main action/event being described, or something that has happened in the past in certain circumstances.

Matthew 4:3 Εἰ υἱὸς εἶ τοῦ θεοῦ, εἰπὲ ἵνα οἱ λίθοι οὗτοι ἄρτοι γένωνται.

Mark 11:25 ἀφίετε εἴ τι ἔχετε κατά τινος

Romans 2:25 ἐὰν δὲ παραβάτης νόμου ᾖς, ἡ περιτομή σου ἀκροβυστία γέγονεν

When a conjunctive conjunction connects two events that happen at the same time, it has a similar meaning to a conditional conjunction expressing an actual condition. In these cases, the conjunction can be translated as "while" or "when" in English.

Luke 1:32 οὗτος ἔσται μέγας καὶ υἱὸς Ὑψίστου κληθήσεται

Luke 1:41 καὶ ἐγένετο ὡς ἤκουσεν [t]τὸν ἀσπασμὸν τῆς Μαρίας ἡ Ἐλισάβετ, ἐσκίρτησεν τὸ βρέφος ἐν τῇ κοιλίᾳ αὐτῆς

#1

#2

#3

A `concessive` conjunction expresses an exception or disclaimer to what has been stated immediately previous.

#1

#2

#3

A `restrictive` conjunction sets apart a clause or phrase as unique within its context. Sometimes this restrictive function emphasizes a particular item as the most important or most prominent; in these cases, the conjunction is similar in meaning to an affirmative conjunction. At other times, however, this restrictive function introduces a particular limitation to something previously expressed; in these cases, this conjunction is similar in meaning to a concessive conjunction.

#1

#2

#3

An `asseverative` conjunction expresses an affirmation in response to what was stated previously. It is very similar to an affirmative particle. An affirmative particle expresses a simple affirmation. An asseverative conjunction expresses an affirmation specifically in response to what was stated immediately previous. Asseverative conjunctions are often translated into English in various ways, such as "surely," "but also," "and even," and others.

Table 1: Example: ROM 15:25

νυνὶ δὲ πορεύομαι εἰς Ἰερουσαλὴμ
nyni de poreuomai eis Ierousalēm
now but I am going into Jerusalem
but now I am going to Jerusalem
Matthew 26:65
τότε ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς διέρρηξεν τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτοῦ

CONJUNCTION COORDINATING

16.1 Summary

`Coordinating conjunctions` connect two or more words, phrases, clauses, or sentences that are equally salient within a portion of text.

16.2 Article

Some common coordinating conjunctions in English include the words "and," "but," "so," and "then." These conjunctions are often to connect phrases that, logically, are equally salient to the text. For examples, consider the sentence: "I like apples and bananas." In the above sentence, the word "and" is a coordinating conjunction. It indicates that the speaker has the same level of preference for apples and bananas. For another example, consider the sentence: "John went to the store, *so* his wife visited her friend."] In the above sentence, the word "so" is a coordinating conjunction. It indicates the reason/result relationship between the first clause ("John went to the store") and the second clause ("his wife visited her friend"). Both clauses are of equal salience to the text.

16.3 Examples

Table 1: Example: Matthew 2:13

ἐγερθεὶς παράλαβε τὸ παιδίον καὶ τὴν μητέρα αὐτοῦ καὶ φεῦγε εἰς   Αἴγυπτον
egertheis paralabe to paidion kai tēn mētera autou kai pheuge eis   Aigypton
Arise you take the child and the mother of him and flee into Egypt
Get up, take the young child and his mother, and flee to Egypt.

Matthew 3:3 οὗτος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ ῥηθεὶς [b]διὰ Ἠσαΐου τοῦ προφήτου λέγοντος

Matthew 3:4 αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Ἰωάννης εἶχεν τὸ ἔνδυμα αὐτοῦ ἀπὸ τριχῶν καμήλου

SEVENTEEN

CONJUNCTION CORRELATIVE

17.1 Summary

A `correlative conjunction` is a conjunctive particle used with a correlative adverb to join together two different words, phrases, or clauses.

17.2 Article

Correlative particles are used as a pair to join together two different words, phrases, or clauses. The first particle is a correlative adverb. The second particle is a correlative conjunction. For example, consider the sentence, "You may choose either this book or that book." The words "either" and "or" are correlative particles. The word "either" is a correlative adverb. The word "or" is a correlative conjunction. The two correlative particles work together as a join together the two phrases "this book" and "that book."

17.3 Examples

Table 1: Example: 1 Thessalonians 5:10

..εἴτε γρηγορῶμεν εἴτε καθεύδωμεν ἅμα σὺν αὐτῷ ζήσωμεν
..eite grēgorōmen eite katheudōmen hama syn autō zēsōmen
..whether we are awake or we are asleep together with him we will   live
..whether we are awake or asleep, we may live together with him.

Matthew 9:37 τότε λέγει τοῖς μαθηταῖς αὐτοῦ· Ὁ μὲν θερισμὸς πολύς, οἱ δὲ ἐργάται ὀλίγοι·

#3

CONJUNCTION SUBORDINATING

18.1 Summary

A `subordinating conjunction` connects two phrases, clauses, or sentences that are NOT equally salient within a portion of text. The second phrase, clause, or sentence is logically dependent in some way on the initial phrase, clause, or sentence.

18.2 Article

In English, some common subordinating conjunctions include the words "since," "because," "before," and "until." These conjunctions are often to connect phrases that, logically, are NOT equally salient to the text. For example, consider the sentence: "I like apples because they are juicy." In the above sentence, the word "because" is a subordinating conjunction. It indicates the reason why the speaker likes apples. It does NOT indicate why apples are juicy. The second clause ("they are juicy") is NOT as logically salient to the text as the first clause ("I like apples"). For another example, consider the sentence: "John went to the store until it closed."] In the above sentence, the word "until" is a subordinating conjunction. It indicates how long John went to the store. It does NOT indicate how long the store stayed open. The second clause ("it close") is NOT as logically salient to the text as the first clause ("John went to the store").

18.3 Examples

Table 1: Example: Mark 12:34

ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ὅτι νουνεχῶς ἀπεκρίθη εἶπεν αὐτῷ οὐ μακρὰν εἶ ἀπὸ τῆς Βασιλείας τοῦ Θεοῦ
ho Iēsous idōn auton hoti nounechōs apekrithē eipen autō ou makran ei apo tēs Basileias tou Theou
The Jesus when he saw that wisely he had answered he said to him not far you are from the kingdom of God
When Jesus saw that he had given a wise answer, he said to him, "You are not far from the kingdom of God."

Matthew 12:17 Μετανοεῖτε, ἤγγικεν γὰρ ἡ βασιλεία τῶν οὐρανῶν.

MAtthew 7:1 Μὴ κρίνετε, ἵνα μὴ κριθῆτε·

CRASIS

19.1 Glossary

Crasis is when two words are contracted into one word (e.g. where the two words, καὶ [and] and ἐγώ [I] are combined into κἀγώ [and I])

Table 1: Example: ICO 10:33

καθὼς κἀγὼ πάντα πᾶσιν ἀρέσκω
kathōs kagō panta pasin areskō
as I also all in all things I please
I try to please all people in all things

19.2 Article

Crasis is the combination of two words (one of which is usually καὶ [and]) into one word by contraction. Examples include καὶ ἐγώ (and I) becoming κἀγώ (and I).

Table 2: Example: JHN 20:21

κἀγὼ πέμπω ὑμᾶς
kagō pempō hymas
and I send you
I also send you

DETERMINER

20.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, determiners are words that describe another word in the same sentence. Not all determiners are adjectives, but all determiners function like adjectives in a sentence.

20.2 Article

The most common determiner in Koiné Greek is the definite article. Properly speaking, the definite article is not an adjective, but it mimics an adjective in both form and function. Demonstrative pronouns are another common kind of determiner. Within a sentence, a demonstrative pronouns can function like either a pronoun (to refer to something) or an adjective (to describe something). When a demonstrative pronoun functions like a adjective, it is classified as a determiner in this grammar.

20.3 Types of Determiners

20.3.1 Definite Article

The definite article is the most common kind of determiner in Koiné Greek.

20.3.2 Demonstrative Determiner

A `demonstrative determiner` is a demonstrative pronoun that functions as an adjective within a sentence.

20.3.3 Possessive Determiner

A `possessive determiner` is a personal pronoun that functions as a possessive adjective within a sentence.

20.3.4 Differential Determiner

A `differential determiner` is an adjective that distinguishes one thing from another thing within a sentence.

20.3.5 Quantifying Determiner

A `quantitative determiner` expressses how much (or how many) of a thing is in view within a sentence.

20.3.6 Numeral Determiner

`Numeral determiners` are cardinal numbers which quantify something. They say how many there are of a particular thing.

20.3.7 Ordinal Determiner

`Ordinal determiners` are ordinal numbers that indicate the position of something in a sequence.

20.3.8 Relative Determiner

20.3.9 Interrogative Determiner

An `interrogative determiner` introduces a question that identifies or quantifies something in a sentence.

Table 1: Example: John 6:44

κἀγὼ ἀναστήσω αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ἐσχάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ
kagō anastēsō auton en tē eschatē hēmera
and I will raise him on the last day
and I will raise him up on the last day

TWENTYONE

DETERMINER ARTICLE

21.1 Summary

The definite article is the most common kind of determiner in Koiné Greek.

21.2 Article

In Koiné Greek, the definite article describes a noun by identifying it specifically in some way. The definite article contains the same standard word endings as an adjective. Much like a typical adjective, the definite article describes a noun but includes a much wider range of functions than a typical adjective. The definite article must always agree in case, number and gender with the term it describes.

21.3 Form

Table 1: r1 (2-1-2) (ὁ the/he,she,it)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ὁ	ἡ	τό
Genitive	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
Dative	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
Accusative	τόν	τήν	τό
Plural			
Nominative	οἱ	αἱ	τά
Genitive	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
Dative	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
Accusative	τούς	τάς	τά

Table 2: Example: Matthew 1:2

Ἀβραὰμ ἐγέννησεν τὸν Ἰσαάκ Ἰσαὰκ δὲ ἐγέννησεν τὸν Ἰακώβ
Abraam egennēsen ton Isaak Isaak de egennēsen ton Iakōb
Abraham became parent of the Issac, Isaac and became parent of the Jacob
Abraham was the father of Isaac, and Isaac the father of Jacob

21.4 Function

The definite article can function in many different ways in Koiné Greek.

21.4.1 Marks a noun as definite

the noun is definite or specific.

> Ὡς δὲ ἔμελλον αἱ ἑπτὰ ἡμέραι συντελεῖσθαι, (Act 21:27)

> Now when the seven days were almost over

21.4.2 Indicates a specific category of noun

It can indicate a category, rather than a specific person or item.

> ἄξιος γὰρ ὁ ἐργάτης τοῦ μισθοῦ αὐτοῦ (Luk 10:7)

> for the laborer is worthy of his wages (This is a general principle applying to all laborers [the entire category].)

21.4.3 Indicates that an adjective or participle is functioning as a noun

> σὺν τοῖς ἁγίοις πᾶσιν (2Co 1:1)

> with all the saints (lit., "the holy)

> ἔρχεται ὁ ἰσχυρότερός μου ὀπίσω μου, (Mrk 1:7)

> one who is stronger than me is coming after me,

21.4.4 Functions as a personal pronoun

> οἱ δὲ ἐξ ἐριθείας °τὸν Χριστὸν καταγγέλλουσιν (Php 1:17)

> But they from envy preach Christ.

21.4.5 Functions as a possessive pronoun

The article can be used like a possessive pronoun.

> τί γὰρ οἶδας, γύναι, εἰ τὸν ἄνδρα σώσεις; (1Co 7:16)

> For how do you know, woman, if you will save your husband?

21.4.6 Functions as a relative pronoun

The article can be used like a relative pronoun.

> οὕτως γὰρ ἐδίωξαν τοὺς προφήτας τοὺς πρὸ ὑμῶν (Mat 5:12)

> For thus they persecuted the prophets who were before you

8. Personal names often have the article (which often will not be translated).

> Τότε παραγίνεται ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἀπὸ τῆς Γαλιλαίας ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰορδάνην πρὸς τὸν Ἰωάννην (Mat 3:13)

> Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan to John

21.4.7 Indicates temporality when paired with an infinitive

The article can be used with infinitives and indicate temporality.

> καὶ ἐγένετο ἐν τῷ σπείρειν ὃ μὲν ἔπεσεν παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν (Mar 4:4)

> and it happened when he sowed (lit. in the to sow), some fell by the roadside

21.4.8 Indicates the subject when paired with the accusative of an infinitive

The article can be used with infinitives to indicate the subject of
the action which is given in the accusative. (It is sometimes called an accusative of general reference).

> ἐπεθύμησα τοῦτο τὸ πάσχα φαγεῖν μεθ' ὑμῶν πρὸ τοῦ με παθεῖν· (Luk 22:15)

> I desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer (lit. before the me to suffer). (The idea is that the suffering has reference to "me", i.e. Christ).

21.4.9 Indicates the subject of the verb εἰμί (*to be*)

> καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος (Jhn 1:1)

> and the Word was God

Intermediate

21.4.10 Refers back to a specific thing mentioned previously

This is called the anaphoric (meaning "refers to again") use of the definite article.

> πόθεν οὖν ἔχεις τὸ ὕδωρ τὸ ζῶν; (Jhn 4:11)

> Where, then, do you get that living water? (referring back to ὕδωρ ζῶν in 4:10)

21.4.11 Functions as a demonstrative pronoun

This is called the deictic (meaning "pointing") use of the definite article.

ἰδοὺ ὁ ἄνθρωπος. (Jhn 19:5)

"Behold, the man! (meaning "this man", standing here)

21.4.12 Functions as a adjective *par excellence*

The article can be used to indicate that a substantive is the very
best (or worst) of its kind, or "in a class by itself". This is called par excellence.

ὁ προφήτης εἶ σύ; (Jhn 1:21)

Are you the Prophet? (referring to the prophet which Moses said would come after him [Deu 18:15, 18])

21.4.13 Functions as a monadic adjective

The article can be used to indicate that a noun is unique or one of a kind. This is very similar to the previous usage and thus there is debate over which usages are par excellence and which are monadic.)

καὶ ἀκριβέστερον αὐτῷ ἐξέθεντο τὴν ὁδὸν τοῦ θεοῦ (Act 18:26)

and more clearly explained to him the way of God

16. In the construction ὁ δέ or ὁ μὲν … ὁ δέ, the article indicates a change of subject and is used as a third person personal pronoun in the nominative (e.g., he, she, they).

ὁ δὲ ἔφη αὐτοῖς Ἐχθρὸς ἄνθρωπος τοῦτο ἐποίησεν. οἱ δὲ αὐτῷ λέγουσιν … ὁ δέ φησιν· (Matt. 13:28-29)

and he said to them, "An enemy has done this." And they said to him … and he said

17. Similarly, in the construction ὁ μὲν … ὁ δέ when the article is nominative, a contrast is indicated between groups.

ἐσχίσθη δὲ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς πόλεως, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἦσαν σὺν τοῖς Ἰουδαίοις οἱ δὲ σὺν τοῖς ἀποστόλοις. (Act 14:4)

and the crowd of the city was divided, and some were with the Jews but others were with the apostles

18. When two singular nouns are joined by καὶ (and):

   a. If both have the article, the reference is to two separate people.

ὅπου καὶ τὸ θηρίον καὶ ὁ ψευδοπροφήτης (Rev 20:10)

where also [are] the beast and the false prophet.

   b. If only the first of two singular nouns has the article, they are referring to the same person. (This is called the Granville Sharp rule.)

Τύχικος ὁ ἀγαπητὸς ἀδελφὸς καὶ πιστὸς διάκονος ἐν κυρίῳ (Eph 6:21)

Tychichus, the beloved brother and faithful servant in the Lord

   c. Some passages where the Granville Sharp rule applies are theologically important and often debated.

καὶ ἐπιφάνειαν τῆς δόξης τοῦ μεγάλου θεοῦ καὶ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, (Tit 2:13)

and the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ

19. The article is absent in NT Greek in many places where it is required in other languages, especially in prepositional phrases.***

DETERMINER DEMONSTRATIVE

22.1 Summary

A `demonstrative determiner` is a demonstrative pronoun that functions as an adjective within a sentence.

22.2 Article

Demonstrative determiners indicate a specific object or thing by means of a verbal gesture. For example, consider the sentences, "I want this basket," or "I want that basket." The words "this" and "that" are demonstrative determiners. They indicate which basket is wanted.

Demonstrative determiners are classified as either "near" or "far." A "near" demonstrative determiner indicates something near the speaker. A "far" demonstrative determiner indicates something at a distance from the speaker. In the examples above, the word "this" is a "near" demonstrative determiner. The word "that" is a "far" demonstrative determiner.

However, sometimes "near" and "far" demonstrative determiners do not necessarily indicate distance from the speaker. Sometimes a speaker uses both a "near" and a "far" demonstrative determiner to indicate two different items that are the same distance. Consider the example above. If a person is buying a basket in a shop, he may say to the shopkeeper, "I want this basket, but I don't want that basket." In cases like this, the "near" and "far" demonstrative determiners may not indicate distance. The "near" and "far" demonstrative determiners may be a way a simply distinguishing the basket that is wanted from the basket that is not wanted. This is a very common use of demonstrative determiners.

22.3 Form

Table 1: r5 (2-1-2) (οὗτος - this)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο
Genitive	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
Dative	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
Accusative	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
Plural			
Nominative	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
Genitive	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
Dative	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
Accusative	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα

Table 2: r6 (2-1-2) (ἐκεῖνος that)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
Genitive	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
Dative	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ
Accusative	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
Plural			
Nominative	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
Genitive	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
Dative	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
Accusative	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

22.4 Examples

Table 3: Example: John 2:19

ἀπεκρίθη Ἰησοῦς καὶ εἶπεν αὐτοῖς λύσατε τὸν ναὸν τοῦτον καὶ ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἐγερῶ αὐτόν
apekrithē Iēsous kai eipen autois lysate ton naon touton kai en trisin hēmerais egerō auton
answered Jesus and he said to them destroy the temple this and in three days I will raise it
Jesus replied, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up."

Matthew 7:24 Πᾶς οὖν ὅστις ἀκούει μου τοὺς λόγους τούτους

Matthew 7:22 πολλοὶ ἐροῦσίν μοι ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ

Matthew 3:1 Ἐν δὲ ταῖς ἡμέραις ἐκείναις παραγίνεται Ἰωάννης ὁ βαπτιστὴς κηρύσσων ἐν τῇ ἐρήμῳ τῆς Ἰουδαίας

DETERMINER DIFFERENTIAL

23.1 Summary

A `differential determiner` is an adjective that distinguishes one thing from another thing within a sentence.

23.2 Article

Some common different determiners in Koiné Greek include *αλλος, ετερος, μονος,* and some instances of *ιδιος.*

Table 1: Example: John 14:16

κἀγὼ ἐρωτήσω τὸν πατέρα καὶ ἄλλον παράκλητον δώσει ὑμῖν
kagō erōtēsō ton patera kai allon paraklēton dōsei hymin
and I I will ask the father and another comforter he will give to you
and I will pray to the Father, and he will give you another Comforter
Matthew 8:21
ἕτερος δὲ τῶν [m]μαθητῶν εἶπεν αὐτῷ
Luke 9:36
καὶ ἐν τῷ γενέσθαι τὴν φωνὴν [ak]εὑρέθη Ἰησοῦς μόνος

TWENTYFOUR

DETERMINER INTERROGATIVE

24.1 Summary

An `interrogative determiner` introduces a question that identifies or quantifies something in a sentence.

24.2 Article

Some common interrogative determiners include *ποσος*, *ποιος*, *ποταπος*, and some instances of *τίς*. Interrogative determiners are translated into English uses phrases such as "How large?" or "of what kind?" or "How many?", etc.

24.3 Form

Table 1: r7 (3-3-3) (*τίς* Who?What?Which?Why?)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	τίς	τίς	τί
Genitive	τίνος	τίνος	τίνος
Dative	τίνι	τίνι	τίνι
Accusative	τίνα	τίνα	τί
Plural			
Nominative	τίνες	τίνες	τίνα
Genitive	τίνων	τίνων	τίνων
Dative	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)
Accusative	τίνας	τίνας	τίνα

DETERMINER NUMBER

25.1 Summary

`Numeral determiners` are cardinal numbers which quantify something. They say how many there are of a particular thing.

25.2 Article

All cardinal numerals in Koiné Greek are considered numeral determiners in this grammar. For example, consider the sentence, "John has five books." The word "five" is a numeral determiner.

25.2.1 Cardinals (numerals)

The following four tables are for the declension of the cardinal numbers one through four. One follows a 3-1-3 pattern but only occurs in the singular. The numbers two through four only occur in the plural. Two is the same in the nominative, genetive, and accusative cases.

- Table a12 - εἷς (one)
- Table a13 - δύο (two)
- Table a14 - τρεῖς (three)
- Table a15 - τέσσαρες (four)

Table a12 - εἷς

Table 1: a12 (3-1-3) (εἷς one)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	εἷς	μία	ἕν
Genitive	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός
Dative	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί
Accusative	ἑνά	μίαν	ἕν

Table a13 - δύο

Table 2: a13 (δύο two)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Plural			
Nominative	δύο	δύο	δύο
Genitive	δύο	δύο	δύο
Dative	δυσί	δυσί	δυσί
Accusative	δύο	δύο	δύο

Table a14 - τρεῖς

Note that the masculine and feminine declension is identical.

Table 3: a14 (3-3-3) (τρεῖς three)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Plural			
Nominative	τρεῖς	τρεῖς	τρία
Genitive	τριῶν	τριῶν	τριῶν
Dative	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)
Accusative	τρεῖς	τρεῖς	τρία

Table a15 - τέσσαρες

Table 4: a15 (3-3-3) (τέσσαρες four)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Plural			
Nominative	τέσσαρες	τέσσαρες	τέσσαρα
Genitive	τεσσάρων	τεσσάρων	τεσσάρων
Dative	τέσσαρσι(ν)	τέσσαρσι(ν)	τέσσαρσι(ν)
Accusative	τέσσαρας (τέσσαρες)	τέσσαρας (τέσσαρες)	τέσσαρα

Table 5: Example: Matthew 4:18

εἶδεν δύο ἀδελφούς
eiden dyo adelphous
he saw two brothers
he saw two brothers

Luke 16:28 ἔχω γὰρ πέντε ἀδελφούς

DETERMINER ORDINAL

26.1 Summary

`Ordinal determiners` are ordinal numbers that indicate the position of something in a sequence.

26.2 Article

All ordinal numerals in Koiné Greek are considered ordinal determiners in this grammar. For example, consider the sentence, "John won second prize in the race." The word "second" is an ordinal determiner.

Table 1: Example: Matthew 20:3

καὶ ἐξελθὼν περὶ τρίτην ὥραν εἶδεν ἄλλους ἑστῶτας ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἀργούς
kai exelthōn peri tritēn hōran eiden allous hestōtas en tē agora argous
and going out about third hour he saw others standing in the marketplace idle
He went out again about the third hour and saw other workers standing idle in the marketplace.

DETERMINER POSSESSIVE

27.1 Summary

A `possessive determiner` is a personal pronoun that functions as a possessive adjective within a sentence.

27.2 Article

Possessive determiners indicate an association between an object/thing and a person/entity. For example, consider the sentence: "John loves his son." The word "my" is a possessive determiner. It indicates an association between the "son" and John.

Possessive determiners can be either personal or impersonal. In the example above, the possessive determiner "his" is personal, because it refers to a person ("John"). However, consider the sentence: "The tree shed its leaves." The word "its" is an impersonal possessive determiner, because it does not refer to a person but to an object ("tree"). It indicates an association between the "leaves" and the "tree."

27.3 Form

Table 1: r3 -ἐγώ (I) σύ (you)

Singular	1st person		2nd person
Nominative	ἐγώ		σύ
Genitive	μου (ἐμοῦ)		σοῦ (σου)
Dative	μοι (ἐμοί)		σοί (σοι)
Accusative	με (ἐμέ)		σέ (σε)
Plural			
Nominative	ἡμεῖς		ὑμεῖς
Genitive	ἡμῶν		ὑμῶν
Dative	ἡμῖν		ὑμῖν
Accusative	ἡμᾶς		ὑμᾶς

Table 2: r4 (2-1-2) αὐτός ("he,she,it,they")

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
Genitive	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
Dative	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
Accusative	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
Plural			
Nominative	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
Genitive	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
Dative	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
Accusative	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

Table 3: Example: John 10:27

τὰ πρόβατα τὰ ἐμὰ τῆς φωνῆς μου ἀκούουσιν
ta probate ta ema tēs phōnēs mou akouousin
sheepmy voice my they hear
My sheep hear my voice

TWENTYEIGHT

DETERMINER QUANTIFIER

28.1 Summary

A `quantitative determiner` expressses how much (or how many) of a thing is in view within a sentence.

28.2 Article

Determiners are words that identify or quantify a noun.

Quantifier determiners are words that express a general quantity of the object of reference. (example: both, all, double, remaining, few, every, nobody, entire, many)

Table 1: Example: John 2:10

καὶ λέγει αὐτῷ πᾶς ἄνθρωπος πρῶτον τὸν καλὸν οἶνον τίθησιν
kai legei auto Pas anthrōpos prōton ton kalon oinon tithēsin
and he says to him every man first the good wine he serves
and said to him,"Every man serves the good wine first."

TWENTYNINE

DETERMINER RELATIVE

29.1 Summary

29.2 Article

Some common `relative determiners` include οσος, οιος, οποιος, and some instances of ος and τις.

29.3 Form

Table 1: ὅς,ἥ,ὅ ("who,which")

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ
Genitive	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
Dative	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
Accusative	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
Plural			
Nominative	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
Genitive	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
Dative	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
Accusative	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

Determiners are words that identify or quantify a noun. Relative determiners express a relationship or quantify the noun by comparing the noun with another object. (example: "of what sort", "as great as" , "as far as", "who", "which"

ἦν δὲ σάββατον ἐν ᾗ ἡμέρᾳ τὸν πηλὸν ἐποίησεν ὁ Ἰησοῦς καὶ ἀνέῳξεν αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς. John 9:14

ēn de sabbaton en hē hēmera ton pēlon epoiēsen ho Iēsous kai aneōxen autou tous ophthalmous.

it was now sabboth in which day the clay he made the Jesus and he opened of him the eyes.

Now it was the Sabbath day when Jesus made the mud and opened his eyes.

ᾗ is a relative personal pronoun that is a determiner. It determines or identifies the day in which Jesus opened the blind man's eyes. It was the Sabbath day.

GENDER

30.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, the `gender` ending of a word indicates the grammatical gender of that word, whether it is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

30.2 Article

Koiné Greek uses various kinds of word endings. The term "gender" refers to one of these varieties of word endings. Gender endings in Koiné Greek indicate the grammatical gender of a word. When a word refers to a person, the gender ending of the term usually indicates whether that person is a man or a woman. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, and definite articles all require a gender ending. Verbs and adverbs do not require a case ending.

There are three different kinds of gender endings: masculine, feminine, or neuter.

The Masculine ending indicates that the grammatical gender of that word is masculine.

The Feminine ending indicates that the grammatical gender of that word is feminine.

The Neuter ending indicates that the grammatical gender of that word is neuter.

Table 1: Example: ITH 5:23

ὑμῶν τὸ πνεῦμα καὶ ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ τὸ σῶμα
hymōn to pneuma kai hē psychē kai to sōma
your spirit and soul and body
your spirit, soul, and body

GENDER FEMININE

31.1 Summary

Nouns, adjectives, finite verbs, participles, pronouns, pronominal suffixes, and some particles change their form is according to their grammatical gender, either masculine or feminine.

31.2 Article

GENDER MASCULINE

32.1 Glossary

Nominals are marked for grammatical gender, one of which is masculine.

32.2 Article

THIRTYTHREE

GENDER NEUTER

33.1 Glossary

Nominals are marked for grammatical gender, one of which is neuter.

33.2 Article

INTERJECTION

34.1 Summary

An interjection is a word that expresses strong emotion.

34.2 Article

Interjections usually appear at the beginning of a sentence or clause and are grammatically disconnected from the rest of the sentence. As in many languages, interjections are often "natural sounds", that is, vocal gestures or sounds that a person utters when experiencing certain emotions. Interjections can be used to express both positive and negative emotions.

34.3 Glossary

An interjection is an exclamation, added to a sentence for emphasis (e.g., o!, woe!)

Ὦ βάθος πλούτου καὶ σοφίας καὶ γνώσεως θεοῦ (Rom 11:33) Ο **bathos ploutou kai sophias kai gnōseōs theou Oh depth of riches/wealth and wisdom and knowledge of God **Oh, the depth of the riches and wisdom and knowledge of God!

Table 1: Example: EXO 32:31

𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭 𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭 𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭 𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭 𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭 𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭𒀭
'onna hata ha'am hazzeh hata'ah gedolah
Oh it-has-sinned the-people the-this sin great
Oh, these people have committed a great sin

INTERJECTION DIRECTIVE

35.1 Summary

A `directive interjection` is an interjection that expresses a direct command.

35.2 Article

Interjections usually appear at the beginning of a sentence or clause and are grammatically disconnected from the rest of the sentence. As in many languages, interjections are often "natural sounds", that is, vocal gestures or sounds that a person utters when experiencing certain emotions. Interjections can be used to express both positive and negative emotions.

A directive interjection expresses a command such as "look!" (reference) or "come!" (John 1:29). Some common directive interjections in Koiné Greek include the terms ιδου, δευτε, δευρο (perhaps others?).

> Ἴδε ὁ ἀμνὸς τοῦ θεοῦ ὁ αἴρων τὴν ἁμαρτίαν τοῦ κόσμου Ide ho amnos tou theou ho airōn tēn hamartian tou kosmou See the lamb of the God who is taking away the sin of the world Look (there is) the lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world

INTERJECTION EXCLAMATION

36.1 Summary

An `exclamation interjection` expresses strong emotion by the speaker.

36.2 Article

Interjections usually appear at the beginning of a sentence or clause and are grammatically disconnected from the rest of the sentence. As in many languages, interjections are often "natural sounds", that is, vocal gestures or sounds that a person utters when experiencing certain emotions. Interjections can be used to express both positive and negative emotions.

Some common exclamation interjections in Koiné Greek include the terms αμην, ουαι, ωσαννα, χαιρη (perhaps others?). examples of common interjections in the New Testament (for example, "Woe!" or "Amen" or "Hosanna")

> ἀμὴν γὰρ λέγω ὑμῖν Matthew 5:18 amēn gar legō hymin truy for I say to you

for truly I say to you

INTERJECTION RESPONSE

37.1 Summary

A `response interjection` is an interjection that is in reply to a question, usually either "yes" or "no."

37.2 Article

Interjections usually appear at the beginning of a sentence or clause and are grammatically disconnected from the rest of the sentence. As in many languages, interjections are often "natural sounds", that is, vocal gestures or sounds that a person utters when experiencing certain emotions. Interjections can be used to express both positive and negative emotions.

Some common response interjections in Koiné Greek include the terms *ναι* ("yes"), *ου* ("no"), and *ουχι* ("no").

ἡ δὲ εἶπεν Ναί, κύριε Matthew 15:27 hē de eipen Nai, kyrie she but she said yes Lord

she said yes Lord

INTERROGATIVE

38.1 Glossary

Interrogative is a grammatical feature used to form a question.

38.2 Article

MOOD

39.1 Glossary

Mood is a feature of the verb that indicates the manner in which the speaker is portraying the verbal action in relation to reality." Greek has four moods: indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and optative.

The two remaining verb forms, the infinitive and the participle, technically do not have mood, but are often discussed in the same section as mood in Greek grammars and when parsing verbs.

39.2 Article

The mood of a verb represents its relation to reality as portrayed by the speaker. An action (or an event) can be presented as being 1) real, or 2) potential.

- If the action is being portrayed as real (or actual), the indicative mood will be used. This is the most frequent mood used in the New Testament and it occurs 15,643 times.

- This does not mean that the action portrayed is real. The speaker could be lying. He could be telling a parable, a make-believe story, exaggerating, or just be wrong. In all of these cases the statement is presented as being real. See table VM-2 below or Indicative_Mood

- If an action is being portrayed as potential, the subjunctive, optative, or imperative mood will be used.

  - The subjunctive mood is used to portray a probable or desired action.

  - Therefore it is used when the action is viewed as being possible if certain conditions are met.

  - It may also be used if the action is viewed as probable.

  - Verbs occur in the subjunctive mood 1,868 times.

  - See Table VM-3 below or Subjunctive_Mood

  - The optative mood is used to express something that is possible.

  - Therefore, it is used to express a wish, something hoped for, or a prayer. (Prayers may also be expressed using the imperative mood.)

  - The optative mood is the least used mood in the New Testament. Verbs occur in the optative mood only 70 times.

  - See Table VM-4 below or Optative_Mood

  - The imperative mood is used to express a command.

In addition, the imperative mood is often used when directing someone to carry out an action (if their carrying out that action is dependent upon an act of their will).

* Prayers are often expressed in the imperative mood as are petitions.

* Requests to a superior are also expressed in the imperative mood when there is an expectation that the thing requested would be something that the superior would grant.

* Verbs occur in the imperative mood 1,877 times.

* See Table VM-5 below or Imperative_Mood

The following chart should help to demonstrate these differences.

39.2.1 English Translation of Moods - Table VM-1

39.2.2 Examples of the four moods:

Indicative Example - Table VM-2

Table 1: Table VM-2 Indicative mood

Mark 1:8			
ἐγὼ	ἐβάπτισα	ὑμᾶς	ὕδατι
egō	ebaptisa	hymas	hydati
I	I baptized	you	with water

I baptized you with water

Subjunctive Example - Table VM-3

Table 2: Table VM-3 Subjunctive mood

Mark 6:12				
καὶ	ἐξελθόντες	ἐκήρυξαν	ἵνα	μετανοῶσιν
kai	exelthontes	ekēryxan	hina	metanoōsin
and	having gone out	they proclaimed	that	they should repent

And having gone out, they proclaimed that people should repent.

Optative Example - Table VM-4

Table 3: Table VM-4 Optative mood

Romans 3:4	
μὴ	γένοιτο!
mē	genoito!
Not	may it be

May it never be

Imperative Example - Table VM-5

Table 4: Table VM-5 Imperative mood

Mark 16:15					
κηρύξατε	τὸ	εὐαγγέλιον	πάσῃ	τῇ	κτίσει.
kēryxate	to	euangelion	pasē	tē	ktisei.
You all preach	the	gospel	to all	the	creation

preach the gospel to the entire creation.

MOOD IMPERATIVE

40.1 Glossary

The imperative mood is used in giving a command (e.g. Eat your food).

Λάβετε φάγετε, τοῦτό ἐστιν τὸ σῶμά μου. (Mat 26:26)

Take. Eat. This is my body.

40.2 Article

FORTYONE

MOOD INDICATIVE

41.1 Glossary

The indicative mood indicates that the speaker is portraying or speaking as if the verbal action he is referring to is real (rather than only potential). It is the most frequently used mood and is the default mood when there is no reason to use one of the other moods.

Example: Table VMI-1 Indicative example

Table 1: Table VMI-1 Indicative Example

Matthew 3:11							
ἐγὼ	μὲν	ὑμᾶς	βαπτίζω	ἐν	ὕδατι	εἰς	μετάνοιαν
egō	men	hymas	baptizō	en	hydati	eis	metanoian
I	indeed	you	I baptize	with	water	into	repentance

I baptize you with water for repentance

41.2 Article

The Indicative mood indicates that the action of the verb is being portrayed as real (or actual). It does not mean that the action portrayed is real. The speaker could be lying. He could be telling a parable, a make-believe story, exaggerating, or just be wrong. In all of these cases the statement is presented as being real.

The indicative mood may be used in:

1. Declarative statements. See Declarative Indicative

2. Interrogative statements (or questions). See Interrogative-indicative

3. Conditional statements. See Conditional Statement or

4. Imperatives. See Imperative Indicative

41.2.1 Tense

Tense in the indicative mood, refers to both time and aspect from the speaker's perspective. See Tense

Time in the indicative mood can be past (completed action), Present (either durative or undefined), or future (either durative or undefined).

Aspect refers to the kind of action. The kind of action can be mere occurrence (undefined), durative, or completed. The aspect (or kind of action) for the indicative mood in the present tense must be determined based on the context.

When we say the aspect is "Mere occurrence" or "Undefined" this means the action could have taken place over a long period of time, in a moment of time, or anywhere in between. The aspect (or kind of action) is not defined.

41.2.2 Form

See the Master_Verb_chart

- Table 3 through Table 8 for the complete list of forms for the indicative mood.

15,643 (or 55% of the 28,342 verbs) in the New Testament are in the indicative mood.

The basic form for a verb consists of:

1. An augment (for the imperfect and aorist tenses only) or a reduplication (for the perfect tenses),

2. The tense stem,

3. A tense formative (for the future, aorist tenses except for second aorist, and perfect active tenses),

4. A connecting vowel (which may or may not be present), and

5. Personal ending

See Thematic Indicative Verbs Table V-IT-1a through Table V-IT-5b for a complete listing of the different present, imperfect, future, and aorist tense forms for verbs with a theme vowel.

See Athematic Indicative Verbs for the forms of verbs that do not have a theme vowel.

41.2.3 Declarative indicative

A declarative statement makes a statement or assertion. This is the most common use of the indicative mood.

Example:

Table VMI-2 Declarative Indicative

Table 2: Table VMI-2 Declarative Indicative

John 1:1				
ἐν	ἀρχῇ	ἦν	ὁ	λόγος
en	archē	ēn	ho	logos
in	beginning	it was	the	word

In the beginning was the Word

41.2.4 Interrogative Indicative

The indicative mood may be used in a question when it expects a declarative response. It assumes that there is a factual response to the question.

Example:

Table VMI-3 Interrogative Indicative

Table 3: Table VMI-3 Interrogative Indicative

John 1:38			
λέγει	αὐτοῖς	τί	ζητεῖτε?
legei	autois	ti	zēteite?
He says	to them	what	do you seek

He said to them, "What do you seek?"

The following example (Table VM-4) could be translated as a Declarative Indicative or an Interrogative Indicative based on Greek grammar. The decision to translate this verse as a question (or interrogative) is based on the context. It should also be kept in mind that the punctuation marks in the Greek text are not a part of the original text of the scripture, but are a helpful aid in our translation.

Table VMI-4 Interrogative based on context

Table 4: Table VMI-4 Interrogative based on Context

Matthew 27:11					
σὺ	εἶ	ὁ	βασιλεὺς	τῶν	Ἰουδαίων?
sy	ei	ho	basileus	tōn	Ioudaiōn?
you	you are	the	king	of the	Jews?

"Are you the king of the Jews?" or alternate translation based on grammar "You are the king of the Jews."

[Note: Context makes it clear that Pilate is asking a question and making a declaritive statement that Jesus is King of the Jews.]

41.2.5 Conditional Statement- Indicative

A verb in the indicative mood may be used in the first part of a conditional statement (known as the protasis or the "if clause"). In this case the clause usually begins with ἐι (if). Often it will contain the particle ἀν (a non-translatable particle which makes a statement conditional) in the apodosis (or the "then clause").

It is appropriate for the indicative mood to be used in the protasis because it is being presented as reality. (If this is so, then this.)

Example:

Table VMI-5 Conditional Statement Indicative

Table 5: Table VMI-5 Conditional Statement indicative

John 5:46						
εἰ	γὰρ	ἐπιστεύετε	Μωϋσεῖ	ἐπιστεύετε	ἂν	ἐμοί
ei	gar	episteuete	Mōusei	episteuete	an	emoi
if	for	you believed	Moses	you would have believed		me

For if you believed Moses, you would believe me

41.2.6 Imperative Indicative

The future indicative is sometimes used to express a command.

Example:

Table VMI-6 Imperative Indicative

Table 6: Table VMI-6 Imperative Indicative

Matthew 19:18								
ὁ	δὲ	Ἰησοῦς	εἶπεν	τὸ	οὐ	φονεύσεις	οὐ	μοιχεύσεις
ho	de	Iēsous	eipen	to	ou	phoneuseis	ou	moicheuseis
the	but	Jesus	he said	the	not	you will kill	not	you will commit adultery

But Jesus said, "Do not kill, do not commit adultery"

MOOD INFINITIVE

42.1 Glossary

An infinitive is a verbal noun (e.g., to eat, to run, to go). It expresses aspect and voice like other (finite) verbs, but does not indicate person or number. It can take an object, but usually does not explicitly express a subject.

οὓς οὐκ ἔξεστιν φαγεῖν εἰ μὴ τοῖς ἱερεῦσιν, (Mrk 2:26)

it is not lawful for anyone to eat except the priests

42.2 Article

FORTYTHREE

MOOD OPTATIVE

43.1 Glossary

The optative mood indicates that the speaker is referring to the verbal action as a contingent possibility (even less assured than the subjunctive mood) (e.g., he might eat).

Μηκέτι ἐκ σοῦ εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα μηδεὶς καρπὸν φάγοι. (Mrk 11:14)

May no one ever again eat fruit from you!

43.2 Article

FORTYFOUR

MOOD PARTICIPLE

44.1 Glossary

A participle is a verbal adjective (e.g. eating, going, running). It has properties of a verb in that it expresses aspect and voice. It has properties of an adjective in that it expresses case, gender and number.

καὶ ἀνακειμένων αὐτῶν καὶ ἐσθιόντων ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν Ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι εἷς ἐξ ὑμῶν παραδώσει με ὁ ἐσθίων μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ. (Mrk 14:18)

And as they were reclining and eating [verbal usage], Jesus said, "Truly I say to you that one of you will betray me, the one eating [nominal usage] with me.

44.2 Article

FORTYFIVE

MOOD SUBJUNCTIVE

45.1 Glossary

The subjunctive mood indicates that the speaker is referring to the verbal action as a possibility or probability. (e.g., he may eat, he should eat, he could eat). The subjunctive mood is also used as a mild command (let's eat).

Example: Table VMS-1 Subjunctive Example

Table 1: Table VMS-1 Subjunctive Example

Mark 14:14												
ποῦ	ἐστιν	τὸ	κατάλυμά	μου	ὅπου	τὸ	πάσχα	μετὰ	τῶν	μαθητῶν	μου	φάγω;
pou	es-tin	to	katalyma	mou	hopou	to	Pascha	meta	tōn	math-ētōn	mou	phagō?
Where	it is	the	gue-stroom	of my	where	the	Passover meal	with	the	disci-ples	of me	I may eat?

Where is my guest room where I may eat the Passover with my disciples?

45.2 Article

The subjunctive mood is used to portray a probable or desired action.

- It is used when the action is viewed as being possible if certain conditions are met.
- Dependent Clauses - The subjunctive in a dependent clause is the most common use of the subjunctive preceded with (ἐάν, ἐι, ἄν) [See Dependent Clauses]
- Independent Clauses - The subjunctive may also be used in an Independent Clause either

  (1) in a real question or

  (2) in a question where an answer is not expected to be given.

- Subjunctive of Purpose/Result – The subjunctive case is often used to show purpose or results of an action in a clause that is preceded with a ἵνα. [See Subjunctive of Purpose]
- Exhortative Subjunctive - It is used in the first person as an exhortation (even to the point of being a mild command). {See Exhortative Subjunctive}
- Prohibitive Subjunctive - It is used in prohibitions [See Prohibitive Subjunctive]

- General Subjunctive - It may also be used if the action is viewed as probable, or possible (instead of the optative mood). [See General Subjunctive]

Verbs occur in the subjunctive mood 1,868 times in the New Testament.

45.2.1 Key words:

Verbs which are preceded by ἄν, ἐάν, ἕως, ὅταν, ὅς αν, or ὅπου ἄν will be in the subjunctive. This is a strong clue that a verb in the subjunctive is following.

45.2.2 Tense

Tense in the subjunctive mood refers to Aspect not time. Verbs in the subjunctive mood have no reference to time – past, present, or future.

- Verbs in the present tense refer to continuous action.

- Verbs in the aorist tense refer to an undefined aspect.

- There are 10 perfect subjunctive verbs in the New Testament. These are all based on the verb οἶδα (to know) and would imply an ongoing effect based on the knowledge. See Perfect Tense

45.2.3 Form

The subjunctive is based on the present or aorist tense of the verb.

- The connecting vowel is lengthened. This lengthened connecting vowel is a key indicator of the subjunctive case.

See Paradigms verb_subjunctive

There is no augment for verbs in the aorist subjunctive as there is no reference to time.

There is no tense formative for verbs formed on the second aorist stem in subjunctive.

[Note: There is no augment in the aorist subjunctive]

45.2.4 Dependent Clauses

The most common use of the subjunctive is in dependent or conditional clauses. In fact, if the translator sees an ἐάν, ἑι, or ἄν they should start looking for a verb in the subjunctive case.

Example

Table 2: Table VMS-2 Dependent Clause Subjunctive

Mark 8:35								
ὅς	ἐάν	θέλη	τὴν	ψυχὴν	αὐτοῦ	σῶσαι	ἀπολέσει	αὐτήν
hos	ean	thelē	tēn	psychēn	autou	sōsai	apolesei	autēn
whoever		continually wishes	the	soul	of him	to save	he will lose	it

whoever wants to save his soul will lose it.

[Note: the word for word translation picks up on the continual aspect of the present subjunctive.]

45.2.5 Independent Clauses

The subjunctive case may also be used in an independent clause that is

1) Asking a question or is seeking an answer, or in a

2) Rhetorical question that is asking a question for the purpose of directing the hearers thinking, but not expecting an answer.

Example

Table 3: Table csv-3 Independent Clause Expecting an Answer

Matthew 11:3						
σὺ	εἶ	ὁ	ἐρχόμενος	ἢ	ἕτερον	προσδοκῶμεν?
sy	ei	ho	erchomenos	ē	heteron	prosdokōmen?
You	are you	the	one who is coming	or	another	shall we expect?

Are you the one coming, or are we expecting another?

- [Note: In order to pick up on the continuous aspect of the present subjunctive, this could be translated; "Are you the one who is coming or are we to continue looking for another?"]

Example

Table 4: Table VMS-4 Independent Clause Rhetorical Question

Romans 6:1						
ἐπιμένωμεν	τῇ	ἁμαρτίᾳ	ἵνα	ἡ	χάρις	πλεονάσῃ?
epimenōmen	tē	hamartia	hina	hē	charis	pleonasē?
Shall we continue	in	sin	in order that	the	grace	may abound?

Should we continue in sin so that grace may abound?

[Note: πλεονάσῃ is an aorist subjunctive following a ἵνα clause. See Subjunctive of Purpose/Result below.]

45.2.6 Subjunctive of Purpose/Result

ἵνα + a verb in the Subjunctive mood may be used to express:

1) the purpose for or

2) the result from a course of action.

Approximately one-third (1/3) of uses of the subjunctive case in the New Testament fall into this category.

Example

Table 5: Table VMS-5 Subjunctive of Purpose/Result

Acts 16:30						
κύριοι	τί	με	δεῖ	ποιεῖν	ἵνα	σωθῶ?
kyrioi	ti	me	dei	poiein	hina	sōthō?
Sirs	what	I	is necessary	to do	in order that	I may be saved?

Sirs, what must I do in order to be saved?"

45.2.7 Exhortative Subjunctive

The Exhortative Subjunctive is also known as the Hortatory Subjunctive. It occurs almost always as a first-person plural expression. It is a polite way of encouraging others to join the speaker in a course of action. Sometimes it is also used as a command.

Example: Exhortative Subjunctive

Table 6: Table VMS-6 Exhortive Subjunctive

1 John 4:7		
ἀγαπητοί	*ἀγαπῶμεν*	*ἀλλήλους*
agapētoi	agapōmen	allēlous
Beloved	let us love	one another

Beloved, let us love one another

Example : Exhortative Subjunctive as a command

Table 7: Table VMS-7

Matthew 26:46						
ἐγείρεσθε	*ἄγωμεν!*	*ἰδοὺ*	*ἤγγικεν*	*ὁ*	*παραδιδούς*	*με!"*
egeiresthe	agōmen!	idou	ēngiken	ho	paradidous	me!"
Arise	let us go	look	he is approaching	the	one who is betraying	me

Get up, that we might go. Behold, the one betraying me has approached

[Note: In order to pick up on the imperatival force of the Exhortavie Subjunctive, this could also be translated, "Get up! Let us Go! Behold, the one betraying me has approached."]

[Note: In this example ἐγείρεσθε is a second person plural imperative. Therefore the force of the imperative is carried over onto "Let us go."]

45.2.8 Prohibitive Subjunctive

μή + a verb in the aorist subjunctive is used to indicate a prohibition.

οὐ μή + a verb in the aorist subjunctive is used to indicate an emphatic prohibition. Jesus uses this form to express that something will never happen. It adds extra strength to the prohibition.

Example of Simple Prohibition

Table 8: Table VMS-8 Simple Prohibition

Matthew 1:20						
μὴ	*φοβηθῇς*	*παραλαβεῖν*	*Μαρίαν*	*τὴν*	*γυναῖκά*	*σου*
mē	phobēthēs	paralabein	Marian	tēn	gynaika	sou
not	you should fear	to take	Mary	the	wife	of you

you should not fear to take Mary as your wife,

Example of Emphatic Prohibition

Table 9: Table VMS-9 Emphatic Prohibition

Matthew 24:35					
οἱ	δὲ	λόγοι	μου	οὐ μὴ	παρέλθωσιν
hoi	de	logoi	mou	ou mē	parelthōsin
the	but	words	of me	never	they will pass away

but my words may certainly not pass away.

45.2.9 General Subjunctive

The subjunctive may also occur without any of the key words (ἄν, ἐάν, ἕως, ὅταν, ὅς αν, or ὅπου ἄν) to indicate something that is possible or even probable.

Example - General Subjunctive

Table 10: Table VMS-10 General Subjunctive

Matthew 13:29				
ἐκριζώσητε	ἅμα	αὐτοῖς	τὸν	σῖτον.
ekrizōsēte	hama	autois	ton	siton.
you may uproot	together	with it	the	wheat

you might uproot the wheat along with them.

NEGATIVE

46.1 Glossary

A negative is a grammatical feature used to indicate that something is false (i.e., the opposite of affirmative).

καὶ μὴ λυπεῖτε τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ ἅγιον τοῦ θεοῦ (Eph 4:30)

and do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God

46.2 Article

FORTYSEVEN

NOUN

47.1 Summary

A noun is a word that refers to a person, a thing, a place, or an idea.

47.2 Article

In Koiné Greek, all nouns contain case, gender, and number. By case, a noun can be nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, or vocative. By number, a noun can be singular or plural. By gender, a noun can be masculine, feminine, or neuter. Nouns are listed in a Greek dictionary by their nominative masculine singular form.

Note: Sometimes the actual classification of a noun does not match its form. For example, a noun can appear dual when it is actually plural; a noun can appear masculine when it is actually feminine; and so on.

NOUN

48.1 Glossary

A noun is a part of speech which refers to a living being (e.g., man), place (Jerusalem), thing (water) or quality (goodness). A noun can be the subject or object of a verb or object of a preposition (e.g., The man drank water from Jerusalem).

48.2 Article

Example image include:

Master Case Endings							
First and Second Declension							
	2nd declension		1st declension			2nd declension	
Singular	Masculine		Feminine			Neuter	
Nominative	ος	ς	α	η	-	ον	ν
Genitive	ου	υ	ας	ης	ς	ου	υ
Dative	ῳ	ι	ᾳ	ῃ	ι	ῳ	ι
Accusative	ον	ν	αν	ην	ν	ον	ν
Plural							
Nominative	οι	ι	αι	αι	ι	α	α
Genitive	ων	ων	ων	ων	ων	ων	ων
Dative	οις	ις	αις	αις	ις	οις	ις
Accusative	ους	υς	ας	ας	ς	α	α

FORTYNINE

NOUN (PREDICATE ADJECTIVE)

49.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, a predicate adjective is an adjective that functions as a noun in a sentence and appears in the predicate position.

49.2 Article

`Predicative adjectives` are adjectives that describe nouns using a linking verb. Often the linking verb is not present in the Hebrew text and must be supplied when translating into English. Like attributive adjectives, a predicative adjective usually has the same form as the noun it describes in both gender and number. Unlike attributive adjectives, however, a predicative adjective can be indefinite even if it describes a definite noun.

49.3 Examples

Matthew 7:13 ὅτι πλατεῖα [j]ἡ πύλη καὶ εὐρύχωρος ἡ ὁδὸς

Table 1: Matthew 5:3, "Blessed are the poor in spirit"

Μακάριοι		οἱ	πτωχοὶ	τῷ	πνεύματι
makarioi		hoi	ptōchoi	tō	pneumati
Blessed	are	the	poor	the	in spirit

Table 2: John 3:33, "God is true"

ὁ	θεὸς	ἀληθής	ἐστιν
ho	Theos	alēthēs	estin
the	God	true	he is

Table 3: James 1:12, "Blessed is the man who endures testing."

Μακάριος		ἀνὴρ	ὃς	ὑπομένει	πειρασμόν
makarios		anēr	hos	hypomenei	peirasmon
Blessed	is the	man	who	he endures	a trial

NOUN SUBSTANTIVE_ADJ

50.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, a `substantive adjective` is an adjective that functions as a noun in a sentence and appears in any position other than the predicate position.

50.2 Article

A substantive adjective is not a noun in the proper sense of the word. A substantive adjective is an adjective that stands in place of a noun rather than describing a noun. When a substantive adjective is translated into English, usually a noun or pronoun must be supplied. For example, when the adjective $αγαθος$ ("good") is used as a substantive adjective, it is usually translated into English as "good one" or "good person" or "good thing," etc.

50.3 Examples

Matthew 7:11 ὁ πατὴρ ὑμῶν ὁ ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς δώσει ἀγαθὰ τοῖς αἰτοῦσιν αὐτόν

FIFTYONE

PROPER NOUN

51.1 Glossary

A proper noun is a noun that names or references a specific object. In the New Testament proper nouns are nouns that name a specific person or place.

51.2 Article

Peter and Jerusalem are both proper nouns. Peter is a proper noun because it is the name of a specific person, and Jerusalem is a proper noun because it names a specific city. The opposite of a proper noun is a common noun. The nouns man and city are both common nouns because they are both general and do not name a specific man or specific city.

Table 1: Example: JHN 1:42

σὺ	κληθήσῃ	Κηφᾶς	ὃ	ἑρμηνεύεται	Πέτρος
sy	klēthēsē	Kēphas	ho	hermēneuetai	Petros
you	will be called	Cephas	which	is translated	Peter

you will be called Cephas, which is translated as Peter

Note: Both Cephas and Peter are proper nouns because they are names for a specific person. (Cephas is Peter's name in Aramaic and means "rock." Peter is the Greek translation of the name Cephas and also means "rock.")

PROPER NOUN INDECLINABLE

52.1 Glossary

An indeclinable proper noun is a proper noun that does not "decline" (change its spelling) to indicate how it is functioning in a sentence. An indeclinable proper noun will normally have the same spelling each time it occurs in the New Testament.

52.2 Article

The term "decline" refers to the changes in form (spelling) that most Greek words undergo in order to show how they are functioning in a sentence. If a word is "declinable" it means that the word has different forms to indicate how it is being used in a sentence. Most Greek nouns have different forms to indicate gender, number, and case. Not all Greek words change forms to show how they are functioning in a sentence. Words that do not change forms to indicate their usage are called "indeclinable" words. An "indeclinable proper noun" is a proper noun that does not change forms to indicate how the author is using it in a sentence.

Note: Sometimes an indeclinable proper noun will be spelled differently due to having one or more variant spellings but these differences in spelling are not meant to communicate a difference of function. For example, the indeclinable proper noun Boaz is spelled as Βοὲς in Matthew 1:5 and is spelled as Βόος in Luke 3:32.

Indeclinable proper nouns, in the Greek New Testament, are proper nouns that do not change form. Most often indeclinable proper nouns are words that were borrowed from other languages, such as Hebrew, Latin, and Aramaic. The indeclinable proper noun Ἀβραάμ (Abraham) occurs 73 times in the Greek New Testament and always with the exact same spelling. It is borrowed from Hebrew. An example of an indeclinable proper noun that is the name of a location is Βηθσαϊδά (Bethsaida). An example of an indeclinable proper noun that is the name of a being is Βεελζεβούλ ("Beelzebul" which is a name for Satan).

NUMBER

53.1 Summary

In Koiné Greek, the `number` ending of a word indicates the number of things being referred to by that word.

53.2 Article

Koiné Greek uses various kinds of word endings. The term "number" refers to one of these varieties of word endings. Number endings in Koiné Greek indicate how many there are of that particular thing. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, verbs, and definite articles all require a number ending. Adverbs do not require a case ending.

There are two different kinds of number endings: singular and plural.

The singular ending indicates that there is only one.

The plural ending indicates that there is more than one.

Number is the grammatical feature which signifies whether one (singular) or more (plural) participants are indicated by a word.

53.3 Article

1. If a word's grammatical number is singular, it denotes one participant.

2. If a word's grammatical number is plural, it denotes more than one participant.

3. A collective noun has the grammatical feature of singular yet refers to a group.

4. The grammatical number of a verb usually agrees with the number of it's subject.

FIFTYFOUR

NUMBER PLURAL

54.1 Glossary

Plural number is the grammatical feature which signifies that more than one participant is indicated by a word.

54.2 Article

FIFTYFIVE

NUMBER SINGULAR

55.1 Glossary

Singular number is the grammatical feature which signifies that one participant is indicated by a word.

55.2 Article

NUMERAL INDECLINABLE

56.1 Glossary

This is a numeral which does not decline, i.e., whose form does not change to indicate its function in a sentence.

56.2 Article

PARADIGMS

57.1 Master

57.1.1 Case Endings

- Table 1 - First and Second Declension
- Table 2 - Third Declension

Table 1 First and Second Declension

Note: -The columns shaded in grey show the case ending WITH the final stem vowel.

The unshaded columns show the true case ending.

-The cells with a hyphen (-) indicate that there is no case ending.
The word ends with the theme vowel (or in some cases the theme vowel is lengthened).

Table 2 Third Declension

Note: The columns shaded in grey and the unshaded columns are the same.
This is because Third Declension nouns (or adjectives) end in a consonant and do not have a final stem vowel as in Table 1.

- The cells with a hyphen (-) indicate that there is no case ending.
- Both the Masculine and the Feminine forms are identical for the Third Declension

57.1.2 Verbs

- Table 3 Examples of Verb Tenses in English and Greek
- Table 4 Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs
- Table 5 Master Verb Tense Chart - Present and Imperfect Tenses
- Table 6 Master Verb Tense Chart - The Future Tenses
- Table 7 Master Verb Tense Chart - The Aorist Tenses
- Table 8 Master Verb Tense Chart - The Perfect Tenses

Table 3 - Examples of Verb Tenses in English and Greek

- Active voice – The subject does the action of the Verb
- Middle Voice – The subject does the action of the verb but also is somehow affected by the action of the verb or is participating in the action of the verb (middle voice). Deponent verbs are verbs whose stem is middle or passive in form, but active in meaning. The definitions of many verbs that are classified as deponent have a meaning that implies the participation of the person doing the action.
- Passive Voice – The subject receives the action of the verb.

Table 4 Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs

[Note]

- "c.v." stands for "connecting voewel"
- "p.e." stands for "personal ending"
- The "-" indicates there is no personal ending.
- The omega (ω) at the end of the first person singular verb is the lengthened connecting vowel "o" which lengthens to an "ω".
- Third person plural ending - the "ν" drops out because it is followed by a sigma and the connecting vowel "o" lengthens to compensate for the missing "ν". Therefore, λυ + ο + νσι becomes λυ + ου + σι -> λύουσι

Table 5 - Master Verb Tense Chart - Present and Imperfect Tenses

Table 6 - Master Verb Tense Chart - Future Tenses

Table 7 Master Verb Tense Chart - The Aorist Tenses

Table 8 - The Perfect Tenses

[Note]: Perfect tenses do not have an augment, but do experience reduplication of the initial consonant at the beginning of the word. The initial consonant is then followed by an epsilon.

57.1.3 Contractions and Stops

- Table 9 - Contractions of Single Vowels
- Table 10 - Contractions of Vowels with Dipthongs
- Table 11 - Square of Stops

Table 9 - Contractions of Single Vowels

Table 10 - Contractions of Vowels with Diphthongs

[Note: the shaded rows are for diphthongs that were formed by a contraction] The rules for combining a vowel with a dipthong are as follows:

1) a vowel disappears by absorbtion before a diphthong that begins with the same vowel.

2) When a vowel comes before a diphthong that does not begin with the same vowel, it is contracted with the dipthong's first vowel. The dipthong's second vowel disappears, unless it is an iota (ι) in which case it becomes a subscript.

3) Any vowel (except ο) combining with η will result in η

4) ο +ει and ε + οι(If they are not formed from a contraction) and ο + η make οι

5) ο +ει and ε + ου (if they are formed from a contraction) make ου

Table 11 Square of Stops

The following table shows common contractions that occur when the stem of a word ends in a "stop". A stop is a consonant whose sound is formed by stopping or slowing down the flow of air through the mouth. Stops are classified as Labial (formed by the lips), Velar (formed by pushing the tongue against the roof of the mouth), of Dental (formed by the tongue against the teeth).

The following chart shows what will happen when the stop is followed by either a sigma (σ) or a theta (θ).

57.2 Nouns

57.2.1 First Declension

N-1 Nouns of the first declension ending in α or η

N-1 Nouns of the first declension ending in α or η in the nominative singular are declined as follows:

single	beginning_ruler	day
Nominative_Vocative	ἀρχή	ἡμέρα
Genitive	ἀρχῆς	ἡμέρας
Dative	ἀρχῇ	ἡμέρᾳ
Accusative	ἀρχήν	ἡμέραν
plural		
Nominative_Vocative	ἀρχαί	ἡμέραι
Genitive	ἀρχῶν	ἡμερῶν
Dative	ἀρχαῖς	ἡμέραις
Accusative	ἀρχάς	ἡμέρας

N-2 Nouns of the first declension ending in an ης or ας

N-2 Nouns of the first declension ending in an *ης* or *ας* in the nominative singular are masculine and are declined as follows:

single	prophet	young man
Nominative	προφήτης	νεανίας
Vocative	προφῆτα	νεανία
Genitive	προφήτου	νεανίου
Dative	προφήτῃ	νεανίᾳ
Accusative	προφήτην	νεανίαν
plural		
Nominative	προφῆται	νεανίαι
Vocative	προφῆται	νεανίαι
Genitive	προφητῶν	νεανιῶν
Dative	προφήταις	νεανίαις
Accusative	προφήτας	νεανίας

N-3 Nouns of the first declension ending in an α

N-3 Nouns of the first declension ending in an *α* in the Nominative singular not preceded by a vowel or the letter *ρ* are declined as follows:

single	glory
Nominative_Vocative	δόξα
Genitive	δόξης
Dative	δόξῃ
Accusative	δόξαν
plural	
Nominative_Vocative	δόξαι
Genitive	δοξῶν
Dative	δόξαις
Accusative	δόξας

57.2.2 N-4 Second Declension

Nouns of the second declension ending in *ος* in the Nominative singular are almost always masculine. All nouns ending in *ον* in the Nominative singuar are Neuter. Note that the Nominative, Accussative, and Vocative case of neuter nouns are the same. Note that the case endings for masculine and neuter nouns in the second declensions are the same in the Genitive case and the Dative case.

Single	ος	*ον
	word	work_deed
Nominative	λόγος	ἔργον
Vocative	λόγε	ἔργον
Genitive	λόγου	ἔργου
Dative	λόγῳ	ἐργῳ
Accusative	λόγον	ἔργον
plural		
Nominative_Vocative	λόγοι	ἔργα
Genitive	λόγων	ἔργων
Dative	λόγοις	ἔργοις
Accusative	λόγους	ἔργα

Third Declension

Third declension nouns have stems that end (1) in a consonant or (2) in a vowel, generally ι, υ, or ευ.

Notes on the formation of the vocative singular

- if the stem ends in a mute letter such as φύλαξ or a liquid letter (λ,μ,ν,ρ) AND IS ACCENTED ON THE FINAL SYLLABLE, then the vocative is the same as the nominative.

-Nouns not accented on the last syllable, and all other nouns in the third declension have the vocative like the stem. -exception Nouns with stems ending in ιδ (ἐλιπίς) form the vocative by dropping the final consonant -exception The vocative for σωτήρ is σῶτερ.

Dative plural - When σι is added to the dative plural the same consonantal changes occur that happened in the nominative singular.

N-5 Stems ending with a consonant (can be masculine or feminine) are declined as follows:

stem	ending	γυνή
single		woman_wife
Nominative	various	γυνή
Vocative	generally same as nominative or stem	γύναι
Genitive	ος	γυναικός
Dative	ι	γυναικί
Accusative	α	γυναῖκα
Plural		
Nominative	ες	γυναῖκες
Vocative	ες	γυναῖκες
Genitive	ων	γυναικῶν
Dative	σι(ν)	γυναιξί(ν)
Accusative	ας	γυναῖκας

Note: in this example for the dative plural the κ and the ς contract to form ξ (γυναικ + σι -> γυναιξί)

N-6 Stems ending in a mute (or silent) letter are declined as follows:

stem	φυλακ	σαλπιγγ	ὀδοντ	ἐλπιδ
single	guard	trumpet	tooth	hope
Nominative	φύλαξ	σάλπιγξ	ὀδούς	ἐλπίς
Vocative	φύλαξ	σάλπιγξ	ὀδούς	ἐλπί
Genitive	φύλακος	σάλπιγγος	ὀδόντος	ἐλπίδος
Dative	φύλακι	σάλπιγγι	ὀδόντι	ἐλπίδι
Accusative	φύλακα	σάλπιγγα	ὀδόντα	ἐλπίδα
Plural				
Nominative	φύλακες	σάλπιγγες	ὀδόντες	ἐλπίδες
Vocative	φύλακες	σάλπιγγες	ὀδόντες	ἐλπίδες
Genitive	φυλάκων	σαλπίγγων	ὀδόντων	ἐλπίδων
Dative	φύλαξι	σάλπιγξι	ὀδοῦσι	ἐλπίσι
Accusative	φύλακας	σάλπιγγας	ὀδόντας	ἐλπίδας

N-7 Stems ending in a liquid letter (λ,μ,ν,ρ)

stem	ποιμεν	αἰων	ἡγεμον	σωτερ	κυν
	shepherd	age	leader	saviour	dog
single					
Nominative	ποιμήν	αἰών	ἡγεμών	σωτήρ	κύων
Vocative	ποιμήν	αἰών	ἡγεμών	σωτήρ	κύων
Genitive	ποιμένος	αἰῶνος	ἡγεμόνος	σωτῆρος	κυνός
Dative	ποιμένι	αἰῶνι	ἡγεμόνι	σωτῆρι	κυνί
Accusative	ποιμένα	αἰῶνα	ἡγεμόνα	σωτῆρα	κυνά
Plural					
Nominative	ποιμένες	αἰῶνες	ἡγεμόνες	σωτῆρες	κύνες
Vocative	ποιμένες	αἰῶνες	ἡγεμόνες	σωτῆρες	κύνες
Genitive	ποιμένων	αἰώνων	ἡγεμόνων	σωτήρων	κυνῶν
Dative	ποιμέσι(ν)	αἰῶσι(ν)	ἡγεμόσι(ν)	σωτῆρσι(ν)	κυσί(ν)
Accusative	ποιμένας	αἰῶνας	ἡγεμόνας	σωτῆρας	κύνας

N-8 Stems ending in a vowel (ι,υ,ευ)

stem	πολι	ιχθυ	βασιλευ
	city	fish	king
single			
Nominative	πόλις	ἰχθύς	βασιλεύς
Vocative	πόλι	ἰχθύ	βασιλεῦ
Genitive	πόλεως	ἰχθύος	βασιλέως
Dative	πόλει	ἰχθύι	βασιλεῖ
Accusative	πόλιν	ἰχθύν	βασιλέα
Plural			
Nominative	πόλεις	ἰχθύες	βασιλεῖς
Vocative	πόλεις	ἰχθύες	βασιλεῖς
Genitive	πόλεων	ἰχθύων	βασιλέων
Dative	πόλεσι	ἰχθύσι	βασιλεῦσι
Accusative	πόλεις	ιχθύας	βασιλεῖς (or βασιλέας)

N-8 Neuter Nouns of the third declension

-Note: All nouns with a stem ending in ματ are neuter nouns -Note: Third declension Neuter nouns (like the second declension) have the same ending in the Nominative, Vocative, and accusative singular. -Note: Third declension Neuter nouns in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural end in α except neuter nouns with stems ending in ες.

stem	γραμματ	φωτ	γενες	
single	letter	light	race_people	
Nomina-tive_vocative	γράμμα	φῶς	γένος	
Genitive	γράμματος	φωτός	γένους	
Dative	γράμματι	φωτί	γένει	
Accusative	γράμμα	φῶς	γένος	
Plural				
Nomina-tive_Vocative	γράμματα	φῶτα	γένη	
Genitive	γραμμάτων	φώτων	γενέων (or γενῶν)	
Dative	γράμμασι	•	γένεσι	
Accusative	γράμματα	φῶτα	γένη	

N-9 Irregular nouns of the third declension

stem	πατρ	ανδρ
single	father	man_husband
Nominative	πατήρ	ἀνήρ
Vocative	πάτερ	ἄνερ
Genitive	πατρός	ἀνδρός
Dative	πατρί	ἀνδρί
Accusative	πατέρα	ἄνδρα
Plural		
Nominative	πατέρες	ἄνδρες
Vocative	πατέρες	ἄνδρες
Genitive	πατέρων	ἀνδρῶν
Dative	πατράσι	ἀνδράσι
Accusative	πατέρας	ἄνδρας

57.3 Pronouns

paradigm_pronoun

57.3.1 Table R1 - The Article - *(ὁ,ἡ,τό)*

The article appears approximately 19,723 times in the Greek New Testament. It functions as a pronoun in 16% of the occurrences. 84% of the time it functions as the definite article.

Table 1: R1 (2-1-2) (ὁ the/he,she,it)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ὁ	ἡ	τό
Genitive	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
Dative	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
Accusative	τόν	τήν	τό
Plural			
Nominative	οἱ	αἱ	τά
Genitive	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
Dative	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
Accusative	τούς	τάς	τά

57.3.2 Table R2 - The relative pronoun (2-1-2) (*neuter in "o"*)

Table 2: R2 (2-1-2) (ὅς who,which)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ
Genitive	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
Dative	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
Accusative	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
Plural			
Nominative	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
Genitive	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
Dative	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
Accusative	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

57.3.3 Personal Pronouns

Table R3 - (ἐγώ, σύ) Table R4 - (αὐτός)

Note: ἐγώ and σύ do not have gender

Table R3 - (ἐγώ, σύ)

Table 3: R3 -ἐγώ (I) σύ (you)

Singular	1st person	2nd person
Nominative	ἐγώ	σύ
Genitive	μου (ἐμοῦ)	σοῦ (σου)
Dative	μοι (ἐμοί)	σοί (σοι)
Accusative	με (ἐμέ)	σέ (σε)
Plural		
Nominative	ἡμεῖς	ὑμεῖς
Genitive	ἡμῶν	ὑμῶν
Dative	ἡμῖν	ὑμῖν
Accusative	ἡμᾶς	ὑμᾶς

Table R4 αὐτός

Table 4: R4 (2-1-2) αὐτός (he,she,it,they)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
Genitive	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
Dative	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
Accusative	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
Plural			
Nominative	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
Genitive	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
Dative	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
Accusative	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

57.3.4 Demonstrative pronoun – οὗτος,ἐκεῖνος

Table R5 - οὗτος Table R6 - ἐκεῖνος

Table R5 - οὗτος

Table 5: R5 (2-1-2) (οὗτος - this)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο
Genitive	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
Dative	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
Accusative	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
Plural			
Nominative	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
Genitive	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
Dative	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
Accusative	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα

Table R6 - ἐκεῖνος

Table 6: R6 (2-1-2) (ἐκεῖνος that)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
Genitive	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
Dative	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνη	ἐκείνῳ
Accusative	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
Plural			
Nominative	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
Genitive	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
Dative	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
Accusative	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

57.3.5 Interrogative pronoun – τίς

Table R7 -stems ending in a nu NOTE: The masculine and feminine declensions are identical.

Table 7: R7 (3-3-3) (τίς Who?What?Which?Why?)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	τίς	τίς	τί
Genitive	τίνος	τίνος	τίνος
Dative	τίνι	τίνι	τίνι
Accusative	τίνα	τίνα	τί
Plural			
Nominative	τίνες	τίνες	τίνα
Genitive	τίνων	τίνων	τίνων
Dative	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)
Accusative	τίνας	τίνας	τίνα

57.3.6 Reflexive Pronouns - ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ

**Table R8 (ἐμαθτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ)

Note: - Reflexive pronouns do not appear in the nominative case because they reflect back on the subject of the sentence. - Reflexive pronouns do not occur in the neuter, only in masculine or feminine. - σεαυτοῦ does not occur in the New Testament in the plural, but we have included it here for completeness.

Table 8: R8 (2-1) (ἐμαυτοῦ - of myself, σεαυτοῦ - of yourself)

	Masculine	Feminine		Masculine	Feminine
Singular	ἐμαυταῦ			σεαυτοῦ	
Genitive	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς		σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς
Dative	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ		σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
Accusative	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν		σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
Plural					
Genitive	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν		σεαυτῶν	σεαυτῶν
Dative	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς		σεαυτοῖς	σεαυταῖς
Accusative	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς		σεαυτούς	σεαυτάς

57.4 Adjectives

paradigm_adjective

Adjectives are described by a three number combination that describes the way they are declined. (2-1-2) or (3-1-3), and so on. The three numbers correspond to masculine, feminine, and neuter in that order. The number describes the declension pattern of adjective (1-first declension, 2-second declension, and 3-third declension). Therefore a 2-1-2 pattern will follow the second declension for masculine adjectives, the first declension for feminine adjectives, and the second declension for neuter adjectives.

57.4.1 Adjectives of the Second Declension

2-1-2 uncontracted adjectives

Tables a1 through a3 give the paradigms for uncontracted 2-1-2 adjectives.

- Table a1 - uncontracted adjectives without a vowel shift in the feminine
- Table a2 - uncontracted adjectives with a vowel shift in the feminine
- Table a3 - uncontracted with an omicron in the neuter.

Table a1 - *uncontracted adjectives without a vowel shift in the feminine*

In the feminine declension, the final vowel will remain an alpha, and not lengthen to an eta, for adjectives that have a vowel or the letter rho (ρ) immediately preceding the case ending.

Table 9: a1 (2-1-2) (ἅγιος holy)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἅγιος	ἁγία	ἅγιον
Vocative	ἅγιε	ἁγία	ἅγιον
Genitive	ἁγίου	ἁγιάς	ἁγίου
Dative	ἁγίῳ	ἁγίᾳ	ἁγίῳ
Accusative	ἅγιον	ἁγίαν	ἅγιον
Plural			
Nominative_Vocative	ἅγιοι	ἅγιαι	ἅγια
Genitive	ἁγίων	ἁγίων	ἁγίων
Dative	ἁγίοις	ἁγίαις	ἁγίοις
Accusative	ἁγίους	ἁγίας	ἅγια

Table a2 - *uncontracted with a vowel shift in the feminine*

When the letter immediately preceding the case ending for an adjective is not a vowel or the letter "ρ" the final vowel lengthens in the feminine declension.

Table 10: a2 (2-1-2) (ἀγαθός good)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
Vocative	ἀγαθέ	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
Genitive	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ
Dative	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ
Accusative	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν
Plural			
Nominative_Vocative	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
Genitive	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν
Dative	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς
Accusative	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθάς	ἀγαθά

Table a3 - uncontracted with an omicron in the neuter

Table 11: a3 (2-1-2) (ἄλλος other, another)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἄλλος	ἄλλη	ἄλλο
Genitive	ἄλλου	ἄλλης	ἄλλου
Dative	ἄλλῳ	ἄλλῃ	ἄλλῳ
Accusative	ἄλλον	ἄλλην	ἄλλο
Plural			
Nominative	ἄλλοι	ἄλλαι	ἄλλα
Genitive	ἄλλων	ἄλλων	ἄλλων
Dative	ἄλλοις	ἄλλαις	ἄλλοις
Accusative	ἄλλους	ἄλλας	ἄλλα

2-1-2 contract adjectives

Note: The circumflex accent should help the reader to recognize the contraction.

Table 12: a4 (2-1-2) (ἁπλοῦς single, sincere)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἁπλοῦς	ἁπλῆ	ἁπλοῦν
Genitive	ἁπλοῦ	ἁπλῆς	ἁπλοῦ
Dative	ἁπλῷ	ἁπλῇ	ἁπλῷ
Accusative	ἁπλοῦν	ἁπλῆν	ἁπλοῦν
Plural			
Nominative	ἁπλοῖ	ἁπλαῖ	ἁπλᾶ
Genitive	ἁπλῶν	ἁπλῶν	ἁπλῶν
Dative	ἁπλοῖς	ἁπλαῖς	ἁπλοῖς
Accusative	ἁπλοῦς	ἁπλᾶς	ἁπλᾶ

2-1-2 special paradigms

The stem for μέγας is μεγαλ and the stem for πολύς is πολλ. Note that in the nominative and accusative masculine and neuter in the singular, the stem drops a lambda.

- Table a5 - μέγας
- Table a6 - πολύς

Table a5 - μέγας

Table 13: a5 (2-1-2) (μέγας great)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα
Genitive	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου
Dative	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ
Accusative	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα
Plural			
Nominative	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
Genitive	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
Dative	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις
Accusative	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα

Table a6 -πολῦς

Table 14: a6 (2-1-2) (πολύς much, great)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	πολύς	πολλή	πολὺ
Genitive	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ
Dative	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ
Accusative	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ
Plural			
Nominative	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
Genitive	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
Dative	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
Accusative	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά

3-1-3 Adjectives

The 3-1-3 adjectives (tables a7 and a8) are divided into two groups:

- Table a7 is the paradigm for πᾶς (all, every).
- Table a8 is the paradigm for ταχύς (quick, speedy).

The paradigm for the number one also follows a 3-1-3 pattern but is listed with the cardinals in table a12 below.

Table a7 - πας πᾶς (3-1-3) adjective

The root for πᾶς is παντ This is a very important paradigm to know because it also serves as a model for active and aorist passive participles.

Table 15: a7 (3-1-3) (πᾶς all, every)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
Genitive	παντός	πάσης	παντός
Dative	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
Accusative	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
Plural			
Nominative	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
Genitive	πάντων	πασῶν	πάντων
Dative	πᾶσι(ν)	πάσαις	πᾶσι(ν)
Accusative	πάντας	πάσας	πάντα

Table a8 - ταχύς

Table 16: a8 (3-1-3) (ταχύς quick, speedy)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ταχύς	ταχεῖα	ταχῦ
Genitive	ταχέως	ταχείας	ταχέως
Dative	ταχεῖ	ταχείᾳ	ταχεῖ
Accusative	ταχύν	ταχεῖαν	ταχῦ
Plural			
Nominative	ταχεῖς	ταχεῖαι	ταχέα
Genitive	ταχέων	ταχειῶν	ταχέων
Dative	ταχέσι(ν)	ταχείαις	ταχέσι(ν)
Accusative	ταχεῖς	ταχείας	ταχέα

(2-2-2) ἁμαρτωλός

In this category there are eight adjectives that will sometimes follow the 2-2-2 pattern and sometimes their respective 2-1-2 pattern with a feminine ending of alpha or eta.

Note that the masculine and feminine declensions are identical in the 2-2-2 pattern.

Table a9 - ἁμαρτωλός

Table 17: a9 (2-2-2) (ἁμαρτωλός sinful)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἁμαρτωλός	ἁμαρτωλός	ἁμαρτωλόν
Vocative	ἁμαρτωλέ	ἁμαρτωλέ	ἁμαρτωλόν
Genitive	ἁμαρτωλοῦ	ἁμαρτωλοῦ	ἁμαρτωλοῦ
Dative	ἁμαρτωλῷ	ἁμαρτωλῷ	ἁμαρτωλῷ
Accusative	ἁμαρτωλόν	ἁμαρτωλόν	ἁμαρτωλόν
Plural			
Nominative_vocative	ἁμαρτωλοί	ἁμαρτωλοί	ἁμαρτωλά
Genitive	ἁματωλῶν	ἁμαρτωλῶν	ἁμαρτωλῶν
Dative	ἁμαρτωλοῖς	ἁμαρτωλοῖς	ἁμαρτωλοῖς
Accusative	ἁμαρτωλούς	ἁμαρτωλούς	ἁμαρτωλά

(3-3-3) adjectives

3-3-3 adjectives are divided into two groups.

- Table a10 is the paradigm for stems ending in ες.

- Table a11 is the paradigm for stems ending in ον

Note that the masculine and feminine conjugations are the same for 3-3-3 adjectives.

Table a10 - *αληθής*

Table 18: a10 (3-3-3) (*ἀληθής* true)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἀληθής	ἀληθής	ἀληθές
Genitive	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς
Dative	ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ
Accusative	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθές
Plural			
Nominative	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ
Genitive	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν
Dative	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)
Accusative	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ

Table a11 - *μείζων*

Table 19: a11 (3-3-3) (*μείζων* greater)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	μείζων	μείζων	μεῖζον
Genitive	μείζονος	μείζονος	μείζονος
Dative	μείζονι	μείζονι	μείζονι
Accusative	μείζονα (μείζω)	μείζονα (μείζω)	μεῖζον
Plural			
Nominative	μείζονες (μείζους)	μείζονες (μείζους)	μείζονα (μείζω)
Genitive	μειζόνων	μειζόνων	μειζόνων
Dative	μείζοσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)	μείζοσι(ν)
Accusative	μείζονας (μείζους)	μείζονας (μείζους)	μείζονα (μείζω)

μείζω is an alternative form for *μείζονα* in the masculine and feminine accusative singular, and in the nominative and accusative neuter plural.

μείζους is an alternative form for *μείζονες* in the masculine and feminine nominative plural, *and for *μείζονας* in the masculine and feminine accustive plural.

Cardinals (numerals)

The following four tables are for the declension of the cardinal numbers one through four. One follows a 3-1-3 pattern but only occurs in the singular. The numbers two through four only occur in the plural. Two is the same in the nominative, genetive, and accusative cases.

- Table a12 - εἷς (one)
- Table a13 - δύο (two)
- Table a14 - τρεῖς (three)
- Table a15 - τέσσαρες (four)

Table a12 - εἷς

Table 20: a12 (3-1-3) (εἷς one)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	εἷς	μία	ἕν
Genitive	ἑνός	μιᾶς	ἑνός
Dative	ἑνί	μιᾷ	ἑνί
Accusative	ἑνά	μίαν	ἕν

Table a13 - δύο

Table 21: a13 (δύο two)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Plural			
Nominative	δύο	δύο	δύο
Genitive	δύο	δύο	δύο
Dative	δυσί	δυσί	δυσί
Accusative	δύο	δύο	δύο

Table a14 - τρεῖς

Note that the masculine and feminine declension is identical.

Table 22: a14 (3-3-3) (τρεῖς three)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Plural			
Nominative	τρεῖς	τρεῖς	τρία
Genitive	τριῶν	τριῶν	τριῶν
Dative	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)
Accusative	τρεῖς	τρεῖς	τρία

Table a15 - τέσσαρες

Table 23: a15 (3-3-3) (τέσσαρες four)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Plural			
Nominative	τέσσαρες	τέσσαρες	τέσσαρα
Genitive	τεσσάρων	τεσσάρων	τεσσάρων
Dative	τέσσαρσι(ν)	τέσσαρσι(ν)	τέσσαρσι(ν)
Accusative	τέσσαρας (τέσσαρες)	τέσσαρας (τέσσαρες)	τέσσαρα

57.5 Verbs Indicative Thematic

paradigm_verbs_indicative_thematic

57.5.1 Table V-IT-1a Present Active Tense verbs

[Note] Thematic verbs are verbs that use a "theme" vowel (or "connecting vowel") between the verbal stem and the personal ending in the present indicative. The theme vowel is always an omicron (ο) or an epsilon (ε). [See Verbal_Parts]

[based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; γεννάω - I beget/give birth to/produce; ποιέω - I do/make; πληρόω - I fill/fulfill/complete]

57.5.2 Table V-IT-1b Present Middle/Passive Verbs

[Note] - The middle and passive voices are presented together because they are identical in form. The reader (or translator) will have to make their decision as to the intended voice based on context.

[Note] Thematic verbs are verbs that use a "theme" vowel (or "connecting vowel") between the verbal stem and the personal ending in the present indicative. The theme vowel is always an omicron (ο) or an epsilon (ε). [See Verbal_Parts]

[based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; γεννάω - I beget/give birth to/produce; ποιέω - I do/make; πληρόω - I fill/fulfill/complete]

57.5.3 Table V-IT-1c Imperfect Active Tense verbs

[Note] Thematic verbs are verbs that use a "theme" vowel (or "connecting vowel") between the verbal stem and the personal ending in the present indicative. The theme vowel is always an omicron (ο) or an epsilon (ε). [See Verbal_Parts]

[based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; γεννάω - I beget/give birth to/produce; ποιέω - I do/make; πληρόω - I fill/fulfill/complete]

57.5.4 Table V-IT-1d Imperfect Middle/Passive Verbs

[Note] - The middle and passive voices are presented together because they are identical in form. The reader (or translator) will have to make their decision as to the intended voice based on context.

[Note] Thematic verbs are verbs that use a "theme" vowel (or "connecting vowel") between the verbal stem and the personal ending in the present indicative. The theme vowel is always an omicron (ο) or an epsilon (ε). [See Verbal_Parts]

[Based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; γεννάω - I beget/give birth to/produce; ποιέω - I do/make; πληρόω - I fill/fulfill/complete]

57.5.5 Table V-IT-2 Indicative Thematic Verbs built on Future tense Stem

[Note] The passive voice is omitted in this table because it is based upon the Aorist Passive Stem.

[Based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; κρίνω - I judge.decide/prefer]

57.5.6 Table V-IT-3 Indicative Verbs built on the Aorist Active Stem

[Note] The passive voice is omitted from this table because it is built on the Aorist Passive Stem.

[Built on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; κρίνω - I judge/decide/prefer; λαμβάνω - I take/receive; ; γίνομαι - I am/become/exist]

57.5.7 Table V-IT-4 - Indicative Verbs built on the Perfect and Perfect Middle/Passive Stem

[Built on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; γράφω - I write]

57.5.8 Table V-IT-5α Indicative Verbs built on the Aorist Active Stem

[Built on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; κρίνω - I judge/decide/prefer; λαμβάνω - I take/receive]

57.5.9 Table V-IT-5b Aorist Passive and Future Passive Verbs built on the Aorist Passive Tense stem

[Built on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; χαίρω - I rejoice]

57.5.10 Table V-IT-6 Pluperfect Active and Middle Indicative Thematic Verbs

[Built on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy]

57.6 Verbs Indicative Athematic

paradigm_verbs_indicative_athematic.txt

57.6.1 εἴμι

Table V-AT-1 εἰμί Indicative

Table V-AT - 2 εἰμί Present Active Participle

57.6.2 δίδωμι

Table V-AT-D1 δίδωμι (Active Indicative)

Stem δο- This stem includes δίδωμι (I give - 415 occurrences); παραδίδωμι (I entrust, I betray - 119 occurrences); απωδίδωμι (I payback, I repay - 48 occurrences) along with other compounds of δίδωμι.

Table V-AT-D1a δίδομι Middle/Passive Indicative

57.6.3 ἵστημι

Table V-AT-D2 ἵστημι (Active Indicative)

Stem στα- This stem includes ἵστημι (I stand/cause - 155 occurances); ἀνίστημι (I oppose - 108 occurances); παρίστημι (I make available/ to be present - 41 occurances); καθίστημι (I appoint - 21 occurances); ἀνθίστημι (I oppose - 14 occurances); along with other compounds of ἵστημι.

[Note 1:] Note the smooth breathing (ἔστησα, ἔστην) over the first aorist and second aorist verbs which is because of the aorist augment. This contrasts with the rough breathing due to the reduplication in the perfect form (ἵστηκα).

[Note 2:] Both the present tense and the imperfect tense for the second person singular, the first person plural, and the second person plural are identical in form. Context is the only way to distinguish between the present tense or the imperfect tense when this occurs.

Table V-AT-D2a ἵστημι Middle/Passive Indicative

57.6.4 τίθημι

Table V-AT-D3 τίθημι (Active Indicative)

Stem θη- This stem includes τίθημι (I put/place - 100 occurances); παρατίθημι (I set before - 19 occurances); προστίθημι (I add to something present - 18 occurances) along with other compounds of τίθημι.

Table V-AT-D3a τίθημι Middle/Passive Indicative

57.7 Verbs Non-Indicative Athematic

Paradigm_verbs_nonindicative_athematic.txt

57.7.1 εἴμι

Table V-ATN-1 εἰμί Non-Indicative

Table V-ATN-2 Present Participle (εἰμί)

57.7.2 Subjunctive Non-Indicative Athematic Verbs

Table V-ATN-3S1 Subjunctive Active Non-indicative Athematic verbs

Table V-ATN-3S2 Subjunctive Middle/Passive Non-indicative Athematic verbs

57.7.3 Imperative Non-indicative Athematic Verbs

Table V-ATM-1 Imperative Active Non-indicative Athematic Verbs

Table V-ATM-2 Imperative Middle/passive Non-indicative Athematic Verbs

57.7.4 Infinitive Non-indicative Athematic Verbs

Table V-ATN-1 Infinitives Active Non-Indicative Athematic Verbs

[NOTE] The infinatives marked with an asterisk (*) do not appear in the New Testament, but do appear in the Septuagint.

Table V-ATN-2 Infinitive Middle/Passive Non-indicative Verbs

57.7.5 δίδωμι

Table V-NAP-1 δίδωμι Present Active Participles - Verb Nonindicative Athematic

Table V-NAP-1a δίδωμι Present Middle/Passive Participle - Verb Nonindicative Athematic

57.7.6 ἵστημι

Table V-NAP-2 ἵστημι Present Active Participle - Verb Nonindicative Athematic

Table V-NAP-2a ἵσταμι Present Middle/Passive Participle - Nonidicative Athematic

57.7.7 τίθημι

Table V-NAP-3 τίθημι Present Active Participle - Nonindicative Athematic

Table V-NAP-3a - τίθημι Present Middle/Passive Participle - Nonidicative Athematic

57.8 Verbs Subjunctive

paradigm_verbs-subjunctive.txt

[based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy]

[based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy]

NOTE: Both 1st and 2nd aorist verbs use the same declension pattern with one exception. The second aorist declension is based on the 2nd aorist stem and does not use the sigma tense formative for the aorist middle voice or the theta tense formative for the aorist passive voice.

NOTE: We have not included a declension for the perfect subjunctive because it only occurs 10 times in the New Testament and they are all forms of οἶδα (to know) (εἰδω,εἰδῇς, εἰδῶμεν, and εἰδῆτε) (First and second person singular perfect active subjuncitve; and first and second person plural perfect active subjunctive).

- Table V-ST-2a Subjunctive Thematic Contracted Present Active verbs
- Table V-ST-2b Subjunctive Thematic Contracted Present Middle/Passive Verbs

57.8.1 Table V-ST-2a Subjunctive Thematic Contracted Present Active verbs

[based on the verb γεννάω - I beget/give birth to/produce; ποιέω - I do/make; πληρόω - I fill/fulfill/complete]

57.8.2 Table V-ST-2b Subjunctive Thematic Contracted Present Middle/Passive Verbs

[based on the verb γεννάω - I beget/give birth to/produce; ποιέω - I do/make; δηλόω - I reveal/make known]

Table V-ST-3 Aorist Subjuctive Contracted Verbs

- Table V_ST-3a Aorist Active Subjunctive Contracted Verbs
- Table V-ST-3b Aorist Middle Subjunctive Contracted Verbs
- Table V-ST-3c Aorist Passive Subjunctive Contracted Verbs

57.8.3 Table V-ST-3a Aorist Active Subjunctive Contracted Verbs

[NOTE]: Note that in each case the contract vowel has been lengthed followed by the tense formative.

[based on the verb ἀγαπάω - I love/cherish; ποιέω - I do/make; πληρόω - I fill/fulfill/complete]

57.8.4 Table V-ST-3b - Aorist Middle Subjunctive Contract Verbs

[Based on the verb χράομαι - I use/make use of/lend; αἰτέω - I ask/request; λυτρόω - I release/redeem]

57.8.5 Table V-ST-3c - Aorist Passive Subjunctive Contract Verbs

[Based on the verb πλανάω - I lead astray/wander; φοβέω - I am afraid; πληρόω - I fill/fulfill/complete]

57.9 Verbs Imperative

paradigm_imperative

57.9.1 Table V-MT-1a Active Imperative Verbs (Thematic Uncontracted)

- [Note] The second person plural present active imperative is identical in form to the second person plural present active indicative.
- [Note] There is no augment for the aorist tense in the imperative mood.

[based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy ; βάλλω- I throw/cast/put]

57.9.2 Table V-MT-1b Present Active Imperative Verbs (Thematic contracted)

[based on the verbs τιμάω - I honor; φιλέω -I love/have affection for; δηλόω - I reveal/make known]

57.9.3 Table V-MT-2a Middle/Passive uncontracted verbs

[based on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy ; γίνομαι - I am/become/exist]

57.9.4 Table V-MT-2b Present Middle/Passive Contracted verbs

[based on the verbs τιμάω - I honor; φιλέω -I love/have affection for; δηλόω - I reveal/make known]

57.9.5 Table V-MT-3 Aorist Passive Imperative verbs

[based on the verbs λύω - I loose/untie/destroy ; τιμάω - I honor; φιλέω -I love/have affection for; δηλόω - I reveal/make known]

57.10 Verbs Infinitive

paradigm_infinitive

57.10.1 Table V-NT Verb Infinitive Morpheme Chart

57.10.2 Table V-NT-1 Verb Infinitive with theme vowels

[based on the verbs λύω - I loose/untie/destroy ; βάλλω - I throw/cast]

57.11 Participles

paradigm_participles

[Note] Participles built on a present tense stem indicate continuous action.

57.11.1 Table V-P-T1 Present Active (and Middle) Participles

57.11.2 Table V-P-T2 Aorist Active and Middle Participles

[Note: Second Aorist Active and Middle Participles will look just like the Present Active and Middle Participles, except that they are formed based on the second aorist stem. Therefore, use Table V-P-T1 above for second aorist paradigms.]

The following table is for First Aorist Active and Middle Participles.

57.11.3 Table V-P-T3 Aorist Passive Participles

57.11.4 Table V-P-T4 Perfect Participles

FIFTYEIGHT

PARTICLE

58.1 Summary

58.2 Article

58.3 Types

FIFTYNINE

PARTICLE ERROR

59.1 Glossary

59.2 Article

SIXTY

PARTICLE FOREIGN

60.1 Glossary

60.2 Article

PERSON

61.1 Glossary

Verbs and pronouns can be in first person, second person, or third person. a verb or pronoun is in the first person if it refers to the speaking. It is in the second person if it refers to the being addressed by the speaker. It is in the third person if it refers to anyone or anything other that the speaker or the being addressed by the speaker.

First Person	Second Person	Third Person
λέγω	λέγεις	λέγει
legō	legeis	legei
I say or I am saying	You say or You are saying	He/she/it says or he/she/it is saying

Table 1: Example: MAT 6:16

ἀμὴν	λέγω	ὑμῖν
amēn	legō	hymin
Truly	I am saying	to you
Truly I say to you		

λέγω is first person; ὑμῖν is second person.

61.2 Article

See the individual articles for First_Person, Second Person, and Third_Person.

Paradigms are located at Paradigm.

PERSON FIRST

62.1 Glossary

First person is a grammatical feature indicating that the speaker is the subject of the verbal action, is speaking about themselves, or is the object of an action or phrase (e.g., I ran, we ran).

Mark 9:24												
καὶ	εὐθὺς	κράξας	ὁ	πατὴρ	τοῦ	παιδίου	ἔλεγεν	πιστεύω	βοήθει	μου	τῇ	ἀπιστίᾳ
kai	euthys	kraxas	ho	patēr	tou	paid- iou	ele- gen	pis- teuō	boēthei	mou	tē	apis- tia
and	immedi- ately	he cried out	the	fa- ther	of the	child	he said	I be- lieve	help	my	the	unbe- lief

Immediately the father of the child cried out and said, "**I*believe! Help my unbelief!"*

In this example, we have a first person, singular, present active indicative verb and a first person, genitive, singular personal pronoun.

62.2 Article

` The first person is the person or persons that are speaking. If it is a single person, it is "I", "me", or "my", if it is a group of people it is "we", "us", or "our".

The first person can be found in Verb forms, and Pronoun_Personal forms.

Note The first person is only used in direct speech.

62.2.1 Form

When a word is in the first person, it can be recognized by a variety of changes to the form. These changes differ greatly from each other and are hard to sum up in a simple, helpful way. These changes can be classified into Verbal Conjugation forms and Personal Pronouns.

Some languages use an inclusive we (which includes the person being spoken to in the "we") and an exclusive we (which excludes the person being spoken to from the "we"). Neither English nor Biblical Greek distinguishes between the inclusive and the exclusive "we". The context will determine which one is meant. See also translationAcademy and translationNotes for help if the context is not clear.

Greek distinguishs between Number_Singular and Number_Plural, but not between Gender_Masculine and Gender_Feminine or Gender_Neuter or in the first person.

The first person can be found in Verb forms and as a Pronoun.

The first person of a verb is formed by adding a first person personal ending (or sufformative) to the verb stem. These endings can be divided into eight basict types: primary active, secondary active, primary middle/passive, and secondary middle/passive. The present tense uses the primary endings. The aorist tense uses the secondary endings.There are also singular and plural endings.

The paradigm below shows a sample of the kinds of changes that signal a first person.

Paradigm

Six Common First Person Verbal Conjugation Forms

Parsing	Greek	Transliteration	Gloss
First person present active indicative singular	λύω	lyō	I am loosing/I loose
First person present active indicative plural	λύομεν	lyomen	We are loosing/We loose
First person present passive indicative singular	λύομαι	lyomai	I am being loosed
First person present passive indicative plural	λυόμεθε	lyometha	We are being loosed
First person aorist active indicative singular	ἔλυον	elyon	I loosed
First person aorist active indicative plural	ἐλύομεν	elyomen	We loosed
First person aorist passive indicative singular	ἐλυόμην	elyomēn	I was loosed

Personal pronouns also have person and appear in various forms

Greek distinguishes between Number_Singular and Number Plural, but not between Gender Masculine, Gender Feminine, and Gender Neuter in the first person.

First Person Personal Pronoun Forms

Parsing	Greek	Transliteration	Gloss
first person nominative singular	ἐγώ	egō	I
first person nominative plural	ἡμεῖς	hēmeis	we
first person genitive singular	μοῦ	mou	my
first person genitive plural	ἡμῶν	hēmōn	our
first person dative singular	μοί	moi	to me
first person dative plural	ἡμῖν	hēmin	to us
first person accusative singular	μέ	me	me
first person accusative plural	ἡμᾶς	hēmas	us

62.2.2 Function

Verb Forms

A first person can be used in a sentence (or a clause) as the subject, an object, or to indicate possession. Personal pronouns may also be the object of a preposition. The number (singular or plural) will agree with its antecedent. However, the case will depend on its function in the sentence (or clause).

Subject

The subject in a sentence is usually the person or thing which does the action of the verb. However, if the verb is in the passive voice, the subject receives the action of the verb.

John 3:11												
ἀμὴν	ἀμὴν	λέγω	σοι	ὅτι	ὃ	οἴδαμεν	λαλοῦμεν	καὶ	ὃ	ἑωράκαμεν	μαρτυροῦμεν
amēn	amēn	legō	soi	hoti	ho	oidamen	laloumen	kai	ho	heōraka-men	marty-roumen
Truly	truly	I say	to you	that	what	we know	we are speaking	and	what	we have seen	we are testi-fying

Truly, truly, **I* say to you, we speak what we know, and we testify about what we have seen*

The personal ending of the verb is generally sufficient to show the person and number of the subject of the sentence. Therefore an emphasis is being made when the nominative case of the personal pronoun is used in conjunction with the verb.

John 14:6									
ἐγώ	εἰμι	ἡ	ὁδὸς	καὶ	ἡ	ἀλήθεια	καὶ	ἡ	ζωή
egō	eimi	hē	hodos	kai	hē	alētheia	kai	hē	zōē
I	I am	the	way	and	the	truth	and	the	life

I am the way and the truth and the life

εἰμί is a first person singular present active indicative verb and indicates the number and subject of the sentence. Therefore the addition of the personal pronoun ἐγώ places a slight emphasis on the pronoun.

As stated at Pronoun Personal, the personal pronoun can be used in all cases.

62.2.3 Prepositions

First person personal pronouns can be the object of a preposition. They therefore can occur in the Genitive, Dative, or Accusative case depending upon the preposition.

First person personal pronoun - preposition

JHN 6:44													
οὐδεὶς	δύναται	ἐλθεῖν	πρός	με	ἐὰν	μὴ	ὁ	Πατὴρ	ὁ	πέμψας	με	ἑλκύσῃ	αὐτόν
oudeis	dy-natai	elthein	pros	me	ean	mē	ho	Patēr	ho	pemp-sas	me	helkysē	au-ton
no one	is able	to come	to	me	if	not	the	fa-ther	who	sent	me	draws	him

No one can come to me unless the Father who sent me draws him

Subject of a sentence or clause (including predicate nominative)

First person personal pronoun - nominative case ἐγώ, ἡμεῖς

2 Corinthians 4:13				
ἡμεῖς	πιστεύομεν	διὸ	καὶ	λαλοῦμεν
hēmeis	pisteuomen	dio	kai	laloumen
We	we believe	therefore	also	we speak

We believe, and so we also speak

The personal ending of the verb is generally sufficient to show the person and number of the subject of the sentence. Therefore an emphasis is being made when the nominative case of the personal pronoun is used in conjunction with the verb.

Possession

First Person personal pronoun – Genitive case ἐμοῦ, μοῦ, ἡμῶν

Mark 1:11						
σὺ	εἶ	ὁ	Υἱός	μου	ὁ	ἀγαπητός
sy	ei	ho	Huios	mou	ho	agapētos
you	are	the	son	my	the	beloved

You are **my* beloved Son*

Note: Some prepositions take their object in the Genitive case.

Objective Cases

The object in a sentence is the person (or object) that receives the direct (or indirect) action of the verb. This is done by adding an object in either the dative or the accusative case.

Dative

First person personal pronoun - dative case ἐμοί, μοί, ἡμῖν

John 2:18						
τί	σημεῖον	δεικνύεις	ἡμῖν	ὅτι	ταῦτα	ποιεῖς
ti	sēmeion	deiknyeis	hēmin	hoti	tauta	poieis
What	sign	do you show	to us	because	these things	you do

_"What sign will you show **us*, since you are doing these things?*

Accusative

First person personal pronoun - accusative case

Table 1: Mark 9:19

φέρετε	αὐτὸν	πρός	με
pherete	auton	pros	me
You bring	him	to	me

Bring him to **me* *

Reflexive use of the first person personal pronoun

ἐμαυτοῦ, ἐμαυτῷ, ἐμαυτόν or αὐτός, αὐτοῦ, αὐτῷ, αὐτοί, αὐτοίς

The first person reflexive personal pronoun ἐμαυτοῦ occurs 37 times in the New Testament in the Genetive, Dative and Accusative cases but occurs only in the masculine singular form.

αὐτός is used as a first person reflexive pronoun 22 times in the New Testament. It occurs in both the singular and plural forms.

One time (at 2 Cor 1:9) in the New Testament the third person reflexive personal pronoun ἑαυτοῖς is used as a first person reflexive personal pronoun.

Table 2: John 12:32

κἀγὼ	ἐὰν	ὑψωθῶ	ἐκ	τῆς	γῆς	πάντας	ἑλκύσω	πρὸς	ἐμαυτόν
kagō	ean	hypsōthō	ek	tēs	gēs	pantas	helkysō	pros	emauton
and I	when	I am lifted up	from	the	earth	all (people)	I will draw	to	me

- When I am lifted up from the earth, I will draw everyone to myself *

SIXTYTHREE

PERSON SECOND

63.1 Glossary

Second person is a grammatical feature indicating that the speaker is addressing or speaking to another person (e.g., you ran).

63.2 Article

PERSON THIRD

64.1 Glossary

Third person is a grammatical feature indicating that the speaker is talking about a person (or thing) other than the speaker or writer or the person being addressed (the reader or listener) (e.g., he ran, she ran, they ran).

Mark 1:8						
αὐτὸς	δὲ	βαπτίσει	ὑμᾶς	ἐν	Πνεύματι	Ἁγίῳ
autos	de	baptisei	hymas	en	Pneumati	Hagiō
he	but	he will baptize	you	with	Spirit	Holy

...but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit.

64.2 Summary

Third person is used when the narrator or speaker refers to someone besides himself or the listener (or reader).

64.3 Article

The third person is used when the person or thing referred to does not include either the speaker(or writer) or the person (or people) being addressed. Pronouns in the third person (he, him, his, she, her, or it or group of people/things they, them, or their) refer to someone or something that is spoken about.

The third person can be used in both direct and indirect speech.

Third person references appear in both Verb forms, and Pronoun_Personal forms.

64.4 Form

When a word is in the third person, it can be recognized by a variety of changes to the form. These changes differ greatly from each other and are hard to sum up in a simple, helpful way. These changes can be classified into Verbal Conjugation forms and Personal Pronouns.

The third person of a verb is formed by adding a third person personal ending (or sufformative) to the verb stem. These endings can be divided into eight basic types: primary active, secondary active, primary middle/passive and secondary middle/passive. There are also singular and plural endings. The paradigm below shows a sample of the kinds of changes that indicate a third person verbal form.

64.4.1 Paradigm

Eight common Third Person Verbal Conjugation Forms

Parsing	Greek	Translitera-tion	Gloss
Third person present active indicative singular	λύει	lyei	He/she/it is loosing
Third person present active indicative plural	λύουσι(ν)	lyousi(n)	They are loosing
Third person present passive indicative singular	λύεται	lyetai	He/she/it is being loosed
Third person present passive indicative plural	λύονται	lyontai	They are being loosed
Third person imperfect active indicative singular	ἔλυε(ν)	elye(n)	He/she/it was loosing
Third person imperfect active indicative plural	ἔλυον	elyon	They were loosing
Third person imperfect passive indicative singular	ἐλύετο	elyeto	He/she/it was being loosed
Third person imperfect passive indicative plural	ἐλύοντο	elyonto	They were being loosed

Personal pronouns also have person and appear in various forms. Greek distinguishes between Number Singular and Number Plural , AND between Gender Masculine , Gender Feminine ,and Gender Neuter in the third person.

Third Person Independent Personal Pronoun Forms

Masculine			
Parsing	Greek	Transliteration	Gloss
Third person nominative singular	αὐτός	autos	he
Third person nominative plural	αὐτοί	autoi	they
Third person genitive singular	αὐτοῦ	autou	his
Third person genitive plural	αὐτῶν	autōn	their
Third person dative singular	αὐτῷ	auto	him
Third person dative plural	αὐτοῖς	autois	them
Third person accusative singular	αὐτόν	auton	him (or it)
Third person accusative plural	αὐτούς	autous	them
Feminine			
Parsing	Greek	Transliteration	Gloss
Third person nominative singular	αὐτή	autē	she
Third person nominative plural	αὐταί	autai	they
Third person genitive singular	αὐτῆς	autēs	her
Third person genitive plural	αὐτῶν	autōn	their
Third person dative singular	αὐτῇ	autē	her
Third person dative plural	αὐταῖς	autais	them
Third person accusative singular	αὐτήν	autēn	her (or it)
Third person accusative plural	αὐτάς	autas	them
Neuter			
Parsing	Greek	Transliteration	Gloss
Third person nominative singular	αὐτό	auto	it
Third person nominative plural	αὐτά	autα	they
Third person genitive singular	αὐτοῦ	autou	its
Third person genitive plural	αὐτῶν	autōn	their
Third person dative singular	αὐτῷ	auto	it
Third person dative plural	αὐτοῖς	autois	them
Third person accusative singular	αὐτό	auto	it

Table 1 – continued from previous page

Third person accusative plural	αὐτά	auta	them

The third person can be found in verb forms, and in Pronoun_Personal forms.

64.5 Function

As stated above a suffix is added to the verb stem to indicate the person and number for the subject of the verb. The subject in a sentence is the person or thing that does the action of the verb. However, if the verb is in the passive voice , the subject of the sentence receives the action of the verb.

John 1:14								
καὶ	ὁ	λόγος	σὰρξ	ἐγένετο	καὶ	ἐσκήνωσεν	ἐν	ἡμῖν
kai	ho	logos	sarx	egeneto	kai	eskēnōsen	en	hemin
and	the	word	flesh	it became	and	it lived	among	us

The Word became flesh and lived among us.

The personal ending of the verb is generally sufficient to show the person and number of the subject of the sentence. Therefore, an emphasis is being made when the nominative case of the personal pronoun is used in conjunction with the verb.

Ephesians 4:11						
καὶ	αὐτὸς	ἔδωκεν	τοὺς	μὲν		ἀποστόλους
kai	autos	edōken	tous	men		apostolous
and	he	he gave	some		(to be)	apostles

He gave some to be apostles

The third person Personal Pronoun can be used as a subject, an object, or to indicate possession. Personal pronouns may also be used as the object of a preposition. The number (singular or plural) and the gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter) will agree with its antecedent. However, the case will depend on its function in the sentence.

Prepositions Third person personal pronouns can be the object of a preposition. They therefore can occur in the Genitive, Dative, or Accusative case depending upon the preposition.

Third person personal pronoun - preposition

Romans 1:17									
δικαιοσύνη	γὰρ	Θεοῦ	ἐν	αὐτῷ	ἀποκαλύπτεται	ἐκ	πίστεως	εἰς	πίστιν
dikaiosynē	gar	Theou	en	autō	apokalyptetai	ek	pisteōs	eis	pistin
righteousness	for	of God	in	it	it is being revealed	from	faith	into	faith

For in it God's righteousness is revealed from faith to faith

Subject of a sentence or clause (including predicate nominative)
    Third person personal pronoun – nominative case αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό, αὐτοί, αὐταί, αὐτά

As stated above, the personal ending of the verb is generally sufficient to show the person and number of the subject of the sentence. Therefore, an emphasis is being made when the nominative case of the personal pronoun is used in conjunction with the verb.

Matthew 5:8									
Μακάριοι		οἱ	καθαροὶ	τῇ	καρδίᾳ	ὅτι	αὐτοὶ	τὸν	Θεὸν	ὄψονται
Makarioi		hoi	katharoi	tē	kardia	hoti	autoi	ton	Theon	opsontai
Blessed	(are)	the	pure	in the	heart	because	they	the	God	they will see

Blessed are the pure in heart, for they will see God.

64.5.1 Possession

Third Person personal pronoun – Genitive case αὐτοῦ, αὐτῆς, αὐτοῦ, αὐτῶν, αὐτῶν, αὐτῶν

Table 2: Example: Matthew 5:2

καὶ	ἀνοίξας	τὸ	στόμα	αὐτοῦ	ἐδίδασκεν	αὐτούς
kai	anoixas	to	stoma	autou	edidasken	autous
and	he opened	the	mouth	his	he was teaching	them

He opened his mouth and taught them

64.5.2 Objective Cases

Third person personal pronoun – Dative case αὐτῷ, αὐτῇ, αὐτῷ, αὐτοῖς, αὐταῖς, αὐτοῖς

Matthew 8:20				
καὶ	λέγει	αὐτῷ	ὁ	Ἰησοῦς
kai	legei	autō	ho	Iēsous
and	he says	to him	the	Jesus

Jesus said to him

Third person personal pronoun – Accusative case αὐτόν, αὐτήν, αὐτό, αὐτούς, αὐτάς, αὐτά

Mark 1:37									
καὶ	εὗρον	αὐτὸν	καὶ	λέγουσιν	αὐτῷ	ὅτι	πάντες	ζητοῦσίν	σε
kai	heuron	auton	kai	legousin	autō	hoti	pantes	zētousin	se
and	they found	him	and	they said	to him	that	everyone	is seeking	you

They found him and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you."

Reflexive use of the third person personal pronoun – ἑαυτοῦ, ἑαυτῆς, ἑαυτοῦ The third person reflexive pronoun occurs 317 times in the New Testament. It occurs in the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative forms. αὐτός, αὐτή, and αὐτό are used as a reflexive pronoun 119 times.

Romans 14:7								
οὐδεὶς	γὰρ	ἡμῶν	ἑαυτῷ	ζῇ	καὶ	οὐδεὶς	ἑαυτῷ	ἀποθνῄσκει
oudeis	gar	hēmōn	heautō	zē	kai	oudeis	heautō	apothnēskei
no one	for	of us	to himself	he lives	and	no one	to himself	he dies

For none of us lives for himself, and none dies for* himself.

SIXTYFIVE

PREPOSITION

65.1 Summary

A preposition introduces a phrase that describes another word/concept within a sentence, usually a noun or a verb. However, like adverbs and particles, sometimes a prepositional phrase can describe the sentence as a whole. In Biblical Hebrew, prepositions can also be used with an infinitive construct verb to show its relationship to the main verb of a sentence.

65.2 Article

Both Biblical Hebrew and Biblical Aramaic have four primary prepositions: the prefix בְּ (in, at, by); the prefix לְ (to, for); the prefix כְּ (as, like); and the prefix מִ (which is a shortened form of the independent preposition מִן, meaning "from"). However, there is also a family of other prepositions. It is common for prepositions to be combined together or with a noun to form new words that have their own range of meanings (similar to compound conjunctions) that may or may not overlap with the meaning of the individual component terms.

65.3 Form

65.4 Types

In Biblical Hebrew, there are 11 general categories of prepositions: indirect object; spatial; locative; temporal; instrumental; correlative; comparative; directional; causal; explanatory; and direct object. However, this are also other types of prepositions in Biblical Hebrew. The specific meanings of individual prepositions can be found in a dictionary or lexicon.

65.4.1 Spatial

Spatial prepositions are translated into English with terms such as "in", "on", "under", "with", "beside", etc. This is a common use of the preposition בְּ.

65.4.2 Locative

Locative prepositions are translated into English with terms such as "to" or "from", etc. This is a common use of the prepositions ⯁⯁⯁ and .⯁⯁⯁

65.4.3 Temporal

Temporal prepositions are translated into English with terms such as "in", "at", "until", "before", "after", etc. This is a common use of the preposition .⯁⯁⯁

65.4.4 Instrumental

Instrumental prepositions are translated into English with terms such as "by", "with", "by means of", etc. This is a common use of the preposition .⯁⯁⯁

65.4.5 Correlative

Correlative prepositions are translated into English with terms such as "like", "as", "according to", etc. This is the primary use of the preposition .⯁⯁⯁

65.4.6 Comparative

Comparative prepositions are translated into English with terms such as "more than" or "greater than", etc. This is a common use of the preposition .⯁⯁⯁

65.4.7 Directional

Directional prepositions are translated into English with terms such as "to", "toward", etc. This is a common use of the preposition .⯁⯁

65.4.8 Causal

Causal prepositions are translated into English with terms such as "for" or "because", etc. This is a secondary use of the prepositions ⯁⯁ and .⯁⯁⯁

65.4.9 Explanatory

Explanatory prepositions are often translated into English with terms such as "as", "for", "to", or it can be left untranslated. This is a common use of the preposition .⯁⯁

SIXTYSIX

PREPOSITION IMPROPER

66.1 Glossary

An adverb used as a preposition with nouns and pronouns, but never with verbs.

66.2 Article

PRONOUN

67.1 Summary

A pronoun is a word that indirectly refers to a person or a thing. For example: "John" is a proper name, "man" is a common noun, and "he" is a pronoun; but all three terms can refer to the same person named "John".

67.2 Article

A pronoun can function as a noun (personal pronouns), an adjective (demonstrative pronouns), or a relative particle (relative pronouns).

67.3 Types

There are several different kinds of pronouns in Koiné Greek. Most pronouns can function either as nouns or adjectives in a sentence. When a pronoun functions as a noun, this grammar classifies it as a pronoun. When a pronoun functions as an adjective, this grammar classifies it as a determiner.

67.3.1 Personal Pronoun

Table 1: r3 -ἐγώ (I) σύ (you)

Singular	1st person		2nd person
Nominative	ἐγώ		σύ
Genitive	μου (ἐμοῦ)		σοῦ (σου)
Dative	μοι (ἐμοί)		σοί (σοι)
Accusative	με (ἐμέ)		σέ (σε)
Plural			
Nominative	ἡμεῖς		ὑμεῖς
Genitive	ἡμῶν		ὑμῶν
Dative	ἡμῖν		ὑμῖν
Accusative	ἡμᾶς		ὑμᾶς

Table 2: r4 (2-1-2) αὐτός ("he,she,it,they")

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
Genitive	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
Dative	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
Accusative	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
Plural			
Nominative	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
Genitive	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
Dative	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
Accusative	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

67.3.2 Demonstrative Pronoun

Table 3: r5 (2-1-2) (οὗτος - this)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο
Genitive	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου
Dative	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ
Accusative	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο
Plural			
Nominative	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
Genitive	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
Dative	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
Accusative	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα

Table 4: r6 (2-1-2) (ἐκεῖνος that)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο
Genitive	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου
Dative	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνη	ἐκείνῳ
Accusative	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο
Plural			
Nominative	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
Genitive	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
Dative	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
Accusative	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

67.3.3 Relative Pronoun

Table 5: ὅς,ἥ,ὅ ("who,which")

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ
Genitive	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
Dative	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
Accusative	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
Plural			
Nominative	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
Genitive	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
Dative	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
Accusative	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

Table 6: r2 (2-1-2) (ὅς who,which)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ
Genitive	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ
Dative	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ
Accusative	ὅν	ἥν	ὅ
Plural			
Nominative	οἵ	αἵ	ἅ
Genitive	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν
Dative	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
Accusative	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ

67.3.4 Indefinite Pronoun

67.3.5 Interrogative Pronoun

Table 7: r7 (3-3-3) (τίς Who?What?Which?Why?)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	τίς	τίς	τί
Genitive	τίνος	τίνος	τίνος
Dative	τίνι	τίνι	τίνι
Accusative	τίνα	τίνα	τί
Plural			
Nominative	τίνες	τίνες	τίνα
Genitive	τίνων	τίνων	τίνων
Dative	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)
Accusative	τίνας	τίνας	τίνα

67.3.6 Reflexive Pronoun

Table 8: r8 (2-1) (ἐμαυτοῦ - of myself, σεαυτοῦ - of yourself)

	Masculine	Feminine		Masculine	Feminine
Singular	ἐμαυταῦ			σεαυτοῦ	
Genitive	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς		σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς
Dative	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ		σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
Accusative	ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν		σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
Plural					
Genitive	ἑαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν		σεαυτῶν	σεαυτῶν
Dative	ἑαυτοῖς	ἑαυταῖς		σεαυτοῖς	σεαυταῖς
Accusative	ἑαυτούς	ἑαυτάς		σεαυτούς	σεαυτάς

Note: - Reflexive pronouns do not appear in the nominative case because they reflect back on the subject of the sentence. - Reflexive pronouns do not occur in the neuter, only in masculine or feminine. - σεαυτοῦ does not occur in the New Testament in the plural, but we have included it here for completeness.

67.3.7 Reciprocal Pronoun

αλληλων

ἐν αὐτῷ ζωὴ ἦν John 1:3

en autō zōē ēn

in him life it was

In him was life

** αὐτῷ** is a taking the place of the noun "λόγος".

SIXTYEIGHT

PRONOUN DEMONSTRATIVE

68.1 Summary

A demonstrative pronoun points to another noun (e.g., this, that, those).

68.2 Article

Demonstrative determiners indicate a specific object or thing by means of a verbal gesture. For example, consider the sentences, "I want this," or "I want that." The words "this" and "that" are demonstrative pronouns. They indicate what is wanted.

Demonstrative pronouns are classified as either "near" or "far." A "near" demonstrative pronoun indicates something near the speaker. A "far" demonstrative pronoun indicates something at a distance from the speaker. In the examples above, the word "this" is a "near" demonstrative pronoun. The word "that" is a "far" demonstrative pronoun.

However, sometimes "near" and "far" demonstrative pronouns do not necessarily indicate distance from the speaker. Sometimes a speaker uses both a "near" and "far" demonstrative pronoun to indicate two different items that are the same distance. Consider the example above. If a person is buying a basket in a shop, they may say to the shopkeeper, "I want this, but I don't want that." In cases like this, the "near" and "far" demonstrative pronouns may not indicate distance. The "near" and "far" demonstrative pronouns may be a way a simply distinguishing the basket that is wanted from the basket that is not wanted. This is a very common use of demonstrative pronouns.

1. A demonstrative pronoun can refer to a noun which is near (οὗτος, this).

   οὗτος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ ῥηθεὶς (Mat 3:3)

   for this is what was spoken

2. A demonstrative pronoun can refer to a noun which is far away (ἐκεῖνος, that).

   ἐκεῖνος κλέπτης ἐστὶν καὶ λῃστής (Jhn 10:1)

   That one is a thief and a robber.

John 1:7 οὗτος ἦλθεν εἰς μαρτυρίαν, ἵνα μαρτυρήσῃ περὶ τοῦ φωτός, ἵνα πάντες πιστεύσωσιν δι' αὐτοῦ.

John 1:8
   οὐκ ἦν ἐκεῖνος τὸ φῶς, ἀλλ' ἵνα μαρτυρήσῃ περὶ τοῦ φωτός.

SIXTYNINE

PRONOUN INDEFINITE

69.1 Glossary

An indefinite pronoun refers to a noun which is unspecified (e.g., τις, a certain one, someone, anyone).

εἶπέν τις ἐξ αὐτῶν (Tit 1:12)

a certain one of them said

69.2 Article

69.3 Examples

Table 1: Example: John 12:33

τοῦτο δὲ ἔλεγεν σημαίνων ποίῳ θανάτῳ ἤμελλεν ἀποθνήσκειν
touto de elegen sēmainōn poiō thanatō ēmellen apothnēskein
This but he said signifying what kind of death he was destined to die
He said this to indicate what kind of death he would die

Matthew 12:29 ἢ πῶς δύναταί τις εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν τοῦ ἰσχυροῦ καὶ τὰ σκεύη αὐτοῦ [ο]ἀρπάσαι, ἐὰν μὴ πρῶτον δήσῃ τὸν ἰσχυρόν

PRONOUN INTERROGATIVE

70.1 Glossary

An interrogative pronoun is a part of speech which stands for a noun and asks a questions (e.g., what, who, what kind, how many?; *τίς, ποῖος, ποταπός, πόσους*).

τίς ὑπέδειξεν ὑμῖν (Mat 3:7)

who warned you?

70.2 Article

70.3 Examples

Matthew 12:29 *ἢ πῶς δύναταί τις εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν τοῦ ἰσχυροῦ καὶ τὰ σκεύη αὐτοῦ [ο]ἁρπάσαι, ἐὰν μὴ πρῶτον δήσῃ τὸν ἰσχυρόν*

PRONOUN PERSONAL

71.1 Glossary

A personal pronoun stands for a personal noun indicating grammatical purpose: first person (I, we), second person (you), third person (he, she, they).

71.2 Article

SEVENTYTWO

PRONOUN RECIPROCAL

72.1 Glossary

A reciprocal pronoun stands for a noun and indicates that two or more people are interacting by performing an action and receiving the results of the action. It is often translated one another.

72.2 Article

A reciprocal pronoun indicates that two or more people are interacting with one another, both doing and receiving the action. In the NT, there is only one reciprocal pronoun, ἀλλήλων. It is always in the plural, and only in the accusative, genitive or dative. It never appears in the nominative or singular, so the lemma is the genitive plural.

καὶ ἔλεγον πρὸς ἀλλήλους (Mrk 4:41)

and they said to one another

SEVENTYTHREE

PRONOUN REFLEXIVE

73.1 Glossary

A reflexive pronoun stands in place of a noun and indicates that the subject itself is affected by the verbal action.

73.2 Article

ὃς ἔδωκεν ἑαυτὸν ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν (Tit 2:14)

who gave himself for us

It is found in the NT in the following forms:

ἐμαυτόν myself

σεαυτόν yourself

ἑαυτόν (αὑτόν) himself

ἑαυτήν (αὑτήν) herself

ἑαυτό (αὑτό) itself

ἑαυτού ourselves, yourselves, themselves

PRONOUN RELATIVE

74.1 Glossary

A relative pronoun introduces a relative clause and refers back to another nominal as its antecedent. Common relative pronouns are who, whom, which and what.

74.2 Article

A relative pronoun refers back to another nominal as it's antecedent and introduces a relative clause. Who, whom,what and which are common relative pronouns.

ἐπίστευσαν τῇ γραφῇ καὶ τῷ λόγῳ ὃν εἶπεν ὁ Ἰησοῦς. (Jhn 2:22)

they believed the Scripture and the word which Jesus said

A relative pronoun always agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but not in case. The case is determined by its function in the relative clause (see ###advanced).

A relative pronoun sometimes takes on the same case as its antecedent, 1) when it is in close proximity to its antecedent and 2) when the relative pronoun would normally be accusative but has been changed to match a genitive or dative antecedent.

ὑμεῖς ἐστὲ οἱ υἱοὶ τῶν προφητῶν καὶ τῆς διαθήκης ἧς ὁ θεὸς διέθετο πρὸς τοὺς πατέρας ὑμῶν (Act 3:25)

you are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant which God gave to our fathers

In this verse, the relative pronoun ἧς (of which) is genitive, to match its antecedent, τῆς διαθήκης (of the covenant), though it should be accusative ἥν (which) since it is the direct object of the verb (διέθετο, [God] gave).

***The case of the *relative pronoun* is determined by its function in the relative clause which may be

(***need to finish and provide examples). 1. object of the relative clause: *accusative* 1. subject of the relative clause: *nominative* 1. *dative* 1. *genitive*

PUNCTUATION

75.1 Glossary

There are four marks as reflected in the following table.

Character	English	Greek
λόγος.	period	period
λόγος,	comma	comma
λόγος·	dot above the line	colon or semiolon
λόγος;	semicolon	question mark

75.2 Article

SUPERLATIVE

76.1 Glossary

Superlative is a degree, expressed by an adjective, indicating that something is the most or greatest in comparison with other entities.

76.2 Article

Best is in the superlative degree and shows what is the greatest or "most" when comparing three or more things.

ἐξενέγκατε στολὴν τὴν πρώτην (Luk 15:22)

bring out the best robe

TENSE

77.1 Glossary

Tense is a form of a verb which indicates the speaker's perspective or viewpoint of the time of action and the kind of action of the verb.

77.2 Article

The time of action can be past, present or future. The kind of action can be mere occurrence, duration or completion.

The Indicative tense in Greek has 10 forms:

1. present tense generally refers to present time and durative action

2. imperfect tense generally refers to past time and durative action

3. aorist tense generally refers to past time and mere occurrence

4. 2nd aorist is different in form but has the same meaning as aorist

5. perfect tense generally refers to past time and completed action

6. 2nd perfect is different in form but has the same meaning as perfect

7. pluperfect tense generally refers to (more remote) past time and completed action

8. 2nd pluperfect is different in form but has the same meaning as pluperfect

9. future tense refers to future time and any of the kinds of action

10. 2nd future is different in from but has the same meaning as future

Older Greek grammars often refer to tense while some newer grammars call this form in order to emphasis verbal aspect. A modern approach is to refer to the form (or morphological encoding) as tense form, while referring to the concept of the viewpoint of the action as aspect.

TENSE AORIST

78.1 Glossary

Aorist - Aorist is a verb tense-form used to express an unspecified kind of action (in other words - only that some form of action has occurred or occurs), without reference to its duration or completeness.

In the indicative mood and aorist participles, the aorist tense generally refers to an unspecified kind of action that occurred in the past. The action is described as a whole (e.g., he wrote).

Example: Table V-TA-1 General example of Aorist tense

Table 1: V-TA-1 Example Aorist tense John 1:3

πάντα	δι'	αὐτοῦ	ἐγένετο
panta	di'	autou	egeneto
all things	through	him	it came into being

All things came into being through him

78.2 Article

78.2.1 Overview

The Tense of a verb is used to indicate the speaker's perspective or viewpoint of:

1. Aspect - the kind of action of the verb. The kind of action may be unspecified (also known as simple or simply completed), continuous (also described as imperfective), or completed with an ongoing effect.

   - Aorist tense- In the aorist tense, aspect is used to express an unspecified kind of action (merely that it has occurred or occurs), without reference to its duration or completeness. It therefore may be used to refer to action that occurred in:

   - a moment (punctiliar action), or

   - action that occurred over a period of time (continuous), or

   - repeated action.

2. Time - the time of action in the Aorist tense

   - The principle use of the Aorist tense in the indicative mood and with participles is to refer to unspecified action (aspect) that occurred in the past. However, it can be used to describe an event:

- that is occurring in the present, or has just been completed.

    - This would also include what is sometimes referred to as an epistolary aorist - where the writer describes his letter as already having been completed and delivered, or

    - an event that will occur in the future.

  - the Aorist tense may also be used for a Gnomic aorist which is used to present a timeless general fact that occurs regularly and so can be assumed to have occurred.

78.2.2 Form:

The basic form for a verb in the indicative Aorist tense is given in Table 4 (Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs) , and Table 7 (Master Verb Tense Chart - The Aorist Tenses) of the Master paradigm.

See also:

- Table V-IT-3 (Indicative Verbs built on the Aorist Active Stem)

- Table V-IT-5α (Indicative Verbs built on the Aorist Active Stem)

- Table V-IT-5b Aorist Passive (and Future Passive Verbs built on the Aorist Passive Tense stem)

- Table V-AT-D1 δίδωμι (Active Indicative)

- Table V-AT-D1a δίδομι Middle/passive indicative

- Table V-AT-D2 ἵστημι (Active Indicative)

- Table V-AT-D2a ἵστημι middle/passive indicative

- Table V-AT-D3 τίθημι (Active Indicative)

- Table V-AT-D3a τίθημι middle/passive indicative

The Paradigms also contain forms of verbs in the aorist tense for the subjunctive mood, imperative mood, participles, and infinitives.

See Paradigms:

- Verbs Subjunctive Tables V-ST-3a through 3c,

- Verbs Imperative, Table V-MT-1a, Table V-MT-2a, and Table V-MT-3

- Verbs Infinitives,

- and Participles, Tables V-P-T2 and T3

In this section we will describe the formation of Verbs with a theme vowel in:

- The 1st and 2nd Aorist Active Indicative

- 1st and 2nd Aorist Middle Indicative, and

- 1st and 2nd Aorist Passive Indicative

The Koine Greek language has two ways of forming the Aorist Tense.

- 1st Aorist, and

- 2nd Aorist

There is no difference in meaning between a 1st Aorist verb and a 2nd Aorist verb. They are both Aorist verbs. If it helps, you may think of it as a room (the Aorist room) and the Aorist room has two doors. It does not matter which door you use to enter the room. In both cases the word is now in the Aorist room.

A 1st Aorist verb uses the same verbal stem that is used in the present tense.

A 2nd Aorist verb is first formed by making a change to the present tense stem for the verb. The change in the stem lets the reader know that it is a 2nd Aorist verb.

Table V-TA-2 First Aorist Active Indicative for Thematic Verbs

Built on the verb λύω (I loose) and κρίνω (I judge)

[Note] * The Aorist tense formative for liquid aorist verbs is " α ". The sigma is dropped.

- 1st person singular (ἔλυσα) - Where one would expect a nu (ν), the personal ending is dropped and so the tense formative stands by itself.

- 3rd person singular [ἔλυσε (ν)] – The nu (ν) is dropped and the alpha (α) of the tense formative is changed to an epsilon (ε). If the following word begins with a vowel a moveable nu (ν) is added.

Table V-TA-2a Formation of First Aorist Active Indicative Thematic Verbs

The 1st Aorist Active Indicative for a verb is formed by using:

1) Augment

- for vowels that begin with a consonant the augment is ε

- for vowels that begin with a vowel the beginning vowel lengthens and becomes:

- an eta (η) for verbs beginning with an alpha (α) or an epsilon (ε), or

- an omega (ω) for verbs beginning with an omicron (ο)

- α -> η

- ε -> η

- ο -> ω

2) plus the 1st aorist active tense stem (usually the same as the present tense stem)

3) plus the aorist tense formative ("σα" or "α" with liquid verbs). Because the 1st aorist tense formative ends with a vowel no connecting vowel is required before adding the secondary personal ending.

4) plus the appropriate secondary personal ending.

[Note]

- Liquid verbs are verbs whose stem ends with a λ,μ.ν, or ρ.

- The Secondary Active personal endings are shown in the upper right quadrant (Quadrant 3) of the Verb Master Chart Table 4. (see below)

Table 4 Verb Master Chart Table 4 Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs

Table V-TA-3 – Second Aorist Active Indicative

Build on the verb λάμβανω (I take, I receive)

Table V-TA-3a Formation of Indicative Verbs with a Theme Vowel Based on the Second Aorist Active Tense Stem

Note: * The present tense stem for λάμβανω (λαμβαν-) has been changed to λαβ- to form the second aorist tense stem.

- Because the second aorist active stem ends with a consonant, a connecting vowel is required.

- No tense formative is required, because the change in the stem notifies the reader that this is a second aorist verb.

- The second aorist uses the same connecting vowels as the present active indicative.

Form – Aorist Middle Indicative verb

Table V-TA-4 illustrates the formation of typical Middle Aorist Active verbs with a Theme Vowel

Built on the verb λύω (I loose) and γίνομαι (I become, I exist)

Table V-TA-4a Formation of 1st Aorist Middle Indicative Thematic Verbs

Form: 1st Aorist Middle Indicative Verb is formed by:

[Note]: The First Aorist Middle Indicative verb is formed by:

1. an Augment

2. plus the First Aorist Active tense stem

3. plus the Aorist Tense Formative,

4. plus the appropriate secondary middle/passive personal ending

Table V-TA-4b Formation of 2nd Aorist Middle Indicative Verb

Table V-TA-4b shows how a Second Aorist Middle Indicative verb is formed.

[Note]: The Second Aorist Middle Indicative verb is formed by:

1. an Augment

2. plus the Second Aorist Active tense stem

3. plus the Connecting Vowel, (a tense formative is not needed because of the change in the stem from the present tense)

4. plus the appropriate secondary middle/passive personal ending

Form – Aorist Passive Indicative verb

Built on the verb λύω - I loose/untie/destroy; χαίρω - I rejoice

Table V-TA-5 Aorist Passive Verbs with a theme vowel

Form: Table V-TA-5a Formation of 1st Aorist Passive Indicative for Thematic Verbs [based on λύω (I loosed)]

The First Aorist Passive Indicative verb is formed by:

1. an Augment

2. plus the First Aorist Active tense stem

3. plus the Tense Formative,

4. plus the appropriate secondary active personal ending

[Note] - There is no need for a connecting vowel because the tense formative ends in eta (η).

[Note] – The aorist passive uses Secondary Active personal endings instead of the expected middle and passive endings.

Table V-TA-5b Formation of 2nd Aorist Passive Indicative for Thematic Verbs [Based on χαίρω (I rejoice)]

[Note] The θ is dropped from the tense formative.

[Note] The aorist passive uses Secondary Active endings instead of the expected middle and passive endings.

- The Secondary middle/passive personal endings are shown in the lower right quadrant (Quadrant 4) of Verb Master Chart Table 4; Table 4 Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs

Table V-TA-6 Upper Right Hand Quadrant of Verb Master Chart 4

Table V-TA-6a Lower Right Hand Quadrant of Verb Master Chart 4

[Note]

- The "-" in Table V-TA-6 indicates there is no personal ending.

- The (σ) in the second person singular middle/passive endings in Table V-TA-6a is in parenthesis because it often is intervocalic (between two vowels) and therefore drops out. The resulting two vowels will then contract. "ε" and "ο" contract to "ου" as in ἐλύου.

- ε + λυ + ε + σο then becomes

    ε + λυ + ε + ο (the sigma drops out) and then
    ε + λυ + ου (the ε and ο contract to form ου)

78.2.3 Examples:

Aorist as an indication of events having occurred in the past

- Aorist indicative- 50 percent of the aorist verbs in the New Testament are Aorist indicative verbs.

- Aorist verbs in the indicative mood generally represent an event that has occurred in the past with an unspecified aspect.

Example

Table 2: V-TA-7 John 4:18

πέντε	γὰρ	ἄνδρας	ἔσχες
pente	gar	andras	esches
five	for	husbands	you had

for you have had five husbands

Table 3: V-TA 7a Rom 10:9

ὁ	Θεὸς	αὐτὸν	ἤγειρεν	ἐκ	νεκρῶν
ho	Theos	auton	ēgeiren	ek	nekrōn
The	God	him	he raised	from/out of	dead

God raised him from the dead

Aorist Participles in the indicative

Participles in the Aorist indicative generally represent events that have occurred in the past.

Example:

Table 4: V-TA 8 Acts 21:7

καὶ	ἀσπασάμενοι	τοὺς	ἀδελφοὺς	ἐμείναμεν	ἡμέραν	μίαν	παρ'	αὐτοῖς.
kai	aspasamenoi	tous	adelphous	emeinamen	hēmeran	mian	par'	autois.
And	after we had greeted	the	brothers	we remained	day	one	with	them.

and having greeted the brothers, we stayed with them for one day

[Note] This verse could also be translated "... after greeting the brothers, we stayed with them one day."

In this example, ἀσπασάμενοι is an aorist middle participle; and ἐμείναμεν is an aorist active indicative.

It should also be remembered that the aspect is undefined. The greeting could have been short in duration or prolonged. In this case we know the duration of the stay. It was one day, because we are given this as additional information.

Aorist tense used for punctiliar action:
    The Aorist tense may be used for action that occurs in an instant or moment.

Example:

Background for Mark 14:64: When the High Priest asked Jesus if He was the Christ, the Son of the Blessed one, Jesus responded with a simple "I am". He also added a comment that they would see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of power. The High Priest then responds.

Table 5: V-TA-9 Mark 14:64

ἠκούσατε	τῆς	βλασφημίας
ēkousate	tēs	blasphēmias
you heard	the	blasphemy

You heard the blasphemy.

The time frame for this action was very short. It was over in a second. That was all the time it took for Jesus to say Ἐγώ εἰμι (I am).

Aorist tense - action occurring over period of time

The aorist tense may also be used for events that occurred over a long period of time. Οἰκοδομήθη (it was built) is an aorist passive indicative verb.

Example:

Table 6: V-TA-10 John 2:20

τεσσεράκοντα	καὶ	ἓξ	ἔτεσιν	οἰκοδομήθη	ὁ	ναὸς	οὗτος
tesserakonta	kai	hex	etesin	oikodomēthē	ho	naos	houtos
forty	and	six	years	was built	the	temple	this

This temple was built in 46 years

Aorist Tense - repeated action

The Aorist tense can be used for action that is repeated.

Example:

Table 7: V-TA-11 Matthew 7:22

Κύριε'	Κύριε	οὐ	τῷ	σῷ	ὀνόματι	ἐπροφητεύσαμεν
Kyrie'	Kyrie	ou	tō	sō	onomati	eprophēteusamen
Lord	Lord	not	in	your	name	we prophesied.

Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name

Aoristic - present

The aorist tense may be used to describe an event occurring in the present, or just completed. This also includes an Epistolary aorist in which the writer describes his letter as already having been completed and delivered.

Example:

John the Baptist tells his followers while they are at the river being baptized.

Table 8: V-TA-12 Mark 1:8

ἐγὼ	ἐβάπτισα	ὑμᾶς	ὕδατι
egō	ebaptisa	hymas	hydati
I	I baptized	you	with water

I baptized you with water

Aoristic – future

The Aorist tense may be used to describe action that will occur in the future. Some have referred to this as the prophetic future (or an event that is so certain that it is described as if it had already occurred). This may be overstating the case as the aorist tense simply presents an event as a completed action. Yet, using the aorist tense, which describes completed action, for something to occur in the future instead of the future tense does add a sense of certainty to the event.

Example:

Table 9: V-TA-13 Romans 8:30

οὓς	δὲ	ἐδικαίωσεν	τούτους	καὶ	ἐδόξασεν
hous	de	edikaiōsen	toutous	kai	edoxasen
whom	and	he justified	these	also	he glorified

And those whom he justified, these he also glorified.

Gnomic aorist

The Gnomic Aorist describes a generally accepted truth or fact that occurs regularly and so can be assumed to have occurred.

Example

Table 10: V-TA-14 James 1:11

ἀνέτειλεν	γὰρ	ὁ	ἥλιος	...	καὶ	ἐξήρανεν	τὸν	χόρτον
aneteilen	gar	ho	hēlios	...	kai	exēranen	ton	chorton
it rises	for	the	sun	...	and	it dries up	the	grass

For the sun rose ... and dried up the grass,

Note: [Or this can be translated "For the sun rises... and dries up the grass" It is not describing a single event that occurred one time in the past but rather just as the sun rises and dries up the grass on a regular basis, "Thus also the rich will wither..."]

TENSE FUTURE

79.1 Glossary

Future tense is a tense form the speaker uses to refer to an action which will take place at a point in the future from when he is speaking (e.g., she will sleep, I will run, they will eat). It can also be used to give a command (e.g., you will obey me!) When used with a participle, it refers to a time in the future from the time of the main verb.

Example: V-TF-1

Table 1: John 6:54

ἀναστήσω	αὐτὸν	τῇ	ἐσχάτη	ἡμέρᾳ
anastēsō	auton	tē	eschatē	hēmera
I will raise up	him	in the	last	day

I will raise him up in the last day.

79.2 Article

79.2.1 Overview

The Tense of a verb is used to indicate the speaker's perspective or viewpoint of:

1. Aspect - the kind of action of the verb. The kind of action may be unspecified (also known as simple or simply completed), continuous (also described as imperfective), or completed with an ongoing effect.

   - Future tense- In the Future tense, aspect is used to express an unspecified kind of action (merely that it will occur), without reference to its duration. This is similar to the Aorist Tense.

   - Therefore, it could refer to an event that takes place over a period of time or in a moment, or is repeated. This can only be determined based on context, and not by the use of the future tense.

2. Time - the time of action for verbs in the Future tense is in the future from the viewpoint of the speaker.

The Principal uses of the future tense are:

- Predictive Future - The principal use of the Future tense in the indicative mood is to refer to an unspecified action or event (aspect) that will occur in the future. It is therefore predictive in nature.

- Future Imperative - The Future tense in the indicative mood may be used as a command instead of using the imperative mood.

- Deliberative Future - The Future tense may be used in the form of consideration or deliberation or thinking out the effects or consequences of a course of action. This often occurs in the form of a question.

- Gnomic Future – The Future tense may be used to describe an event that can reasonably be expected to occur in the future.

- A participle in the future tense refers to an action or event that will occur in the future when compared to the time of the main verb or the sentence.

79.2.2 Form:

The basic form for a verb in the indicative Future tense is given in Table 4 Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs , and Table 6 (Master Verb Tense Chart - The Future Tenses) of the Master paradigm.

See also:

- Table V-IT-2 (Indicative Thematic Verbs built on the Future Tense Stem)

- Table V-IT-5b (Aorist Passive and Future Passive Verbs built on the Aorist Passive Tense Stem

- Table V-AT-1 εἰμί Indicative

- Table V-AT-D1 δίδωμι (Active Indicative)

- Table V-AT-D1a δίδομι Middle/passive indicative

- Table V-AT-D2 ἵστημι (Active Indicative)

- Table V-AT-D2a ἵστημι middle/passive indicative

- Table V-AT-D3 τίθημι (Active Indicative)

- Table V-AT-D3a τίθημι middle/passive indicative

There are only five future infinitives that occur in the New Testament.

- ἔσεσθαι (future infinitive of εἰμί -will be , it will be, will happen) occurs four times, and

- εἰσελεύσεσθαι once (future infinitive of εἰσέρχομαι – to enter, will enter, will go into).

There are only twelve future participles that occur in the New Testament. [ἄξων (to lead away), αποδώσοντες (to give), γενησόμενον (to become), ἐσόμενον (to happen), κακώσων (to harm), κατακρινῶν (to condemn), λαληθησομένων (to be spoken), παραδώσων (to betray), ποιήσων (to make or to bring), προσκυνήσων (to worship), συναντήσοντα (to happen), σώσων (to save)].

In this section we will describe the formation of Verbs with a theme vowel in:

- Future Tense - Active Indicative

- Future Tense - Middle Indicative

- Liquid Future – Active Indicative

- Liquid Future – Middle Indicative

- First Future – Passive Indicative

- Second Future – Passive Indicative , and the

- Future Tense of εἰμί

Liquid verbs are verbs that have a stem ending in λ,μ,ν, or ρ. They are called "liquid" because the air flows around the tongue or through the nose when forming the sound of the letter.

Table V-TF-2 Formation of Future Tense Active Indicative

Table V-TF- 2a Future Active Indicative

[Note]:

1. • The Primary active personal ending are listed in Quadrant 1 of Master Table 4

2. ** There is no primary personal ending for the 1 person singular. In this case the connecting vowel omicron has lengthened to an omega.

3. *** Third person plural ending – The primary personal ending is νσι which would result in λύσονσι, but the "ν" drops out because it is followed by a sigma and the connecting vowel "o" lengthens to compensate for the missing "v". Therefore, λυ + σ +o + νσι becomes λυ +σ + ου + σι -> λύσουσι

Table V-TF-3 Formation of Future Tense – Middle Indicative

Table V-TF-3a Future Middle Indicative (of verbs with a theme vowel)

Note: 1. * λυ + σ+ε+σαι -> The sigma drops out because it is between two vowels and so we get λυ σ ε αι -> Then the epsilon and the alpha contract to η and so we get λυ σ ηι -> A final iota subscripts when following the long vowels (ω,η, or ᾶ) resulting in λύσῃ.

Table V-TF-4 Formation of Liquid Future Active Indicative

[Note] * The sigma is intervocalic (between two vowels]. When this occurs it often drops out resulting in κριν ε o μεν. The epsilon and the omicron then contract to form ου resulting in -> κρινοῦμεν.

Table V-TF-4a Future Active Indicative (of Liquid verbs with a theme vowel)

Notes:

1. First, note that all forms have a circumflex accent on the last syllable.

2. [κριν + εσ + o + -] -> The first person singlular personal ending is "nothing", so we start with κριν + εσ + o ->; The sigma is intervocalic (between two vowels) and drops out and the preceding vowel is lengthened becoming κριν η o ->; The eta and the omicron then contract to become -> κρινῶ.

3. [κριν + εσ + ε + ς] -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out becoming κριν ε ε σ ->; The two epsilons then contract to become -> κριν ει σ -> κρινεῖς.

4. [κριν + εσ + ει] -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out becoming κριν ε ει -> ; The epsilon and the (epsilon iota) contract to become -> κρινεῖ.

5. [κριν + εσ + o + μεν] -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out becoming κριν ε o μεν -> ; Then the epsilon and the omicron contract resulting in -> κρινοῦμεν.

6. [κριν + εσ + ε +τε] -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out becoming κριν ε ε τε -> ; Then the two epsilons contract resulting in -> κρινεῖτε.

7. [κριν + εσ + o + νσι] -> The nu in the primary personal ending drops out because of the sigma to become -> κριν εσ o σι ->; Then, the sigma drops out because it is intervocalic -> κριν ε o σι ->; Then the the epsilon and the omicron contract resulting in -> κρινοῦσι.

Table V-TF-5 Formation of Liquid Future Tense – Middle Indicative

- [Note] The sigma is intervocalic (between two vowels]. When this occurs it often drops out resulting in κριν ε ο μαι. The epsilon and the omicron then contract to form ου resulting in -> κρινοῦμαι.

Table V-TF-5a Future Middle Indicative (of Liquid verbs with a theme vowel)

Notes:

1. First - note that all but one of the forms has a circumflex accent. The circumflex accent marks the contraction. The first person plural has an acute accent on the antepenult syllable (the third syllable from the end). It does not have a circumflex accent, because the circumflex can only stand on the last two syllables.

2. κριν + εσ + ο + μαι -> The sigma is intervocalic (between two vowels) and drops out. -> κριν ε ο μαι. Then the epsilon and omicron contract to become κρινοῦμαι.

3. κριν + εσ + ε + σαι -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out and the preceding vowel is lengthened becoming κριν η ε σαι -> The eta and epsilon contract to become an eta. -> κριν η σαι Then, the second sigma is now intervocalic and it drops out. The eta and alpha contract to an eta. -> κριν η ι -> The final iota then subscripts -> κρινῇ.

4. κριν + εσ + ε + ται -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out becoming κριν ε ε ται -> The two epsilons then contract to become -> κριν ει ται -> κρινεῖται.

5. κριν + εσ + ο + μεθα -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out becoming κριν ε ο μεθα-> The epsilon and the (omicron) contract to become -> κριν ου μεθα -> κρινοῦμεθα

6. κριν + εσ + ε + σθε -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out becoming κριν ε ε σθε -> Then the two epsilons contract resulting in -> κρινεῖσθε.

7. κριν + εσ + ο + νται -> The sigma is intervocalic and drops out becoming -> κριν ε ο νται -> Then the epsilon and the omicron contract resulting in -> κρινοῦνται.

Table V-TF-6 Formation of First Future Passive Indicative

As with the Aorist tense, there is no difference in meaning between a 1st Future Passive Indicative verb and a 2nd Future Passive Indicative verb. They are both Future Passive Indicative verbs. If it helps, you may think of it as a room (the Future Passive room) and the Future Passive room that has two doors. It does not matter which door you use to enter the room. In both cases the word is now in the Future Passive room.

In the case of a Future Passive verb, the Future Passive tense is built upon the Aorist Passive Tense stem without the augment. A First Future Passive verb is built upon a First Aorist Passive Tense stem and the Second Future Passive verb is built upon a Second Aorist Passive Tense stem. In both cases the verb is a Future Passive Indicative verb.

Table V-TF-6 Formation of First Future Passive Indicative Verb

Note:

- There is no augment, because the augment indicates past time in the indicative mood.

- The tense formative θησ is similar to the tense formative for the First Aorist Passive Indicative verb θη but with the sigma (σ) for the future tense added on.

- The presence of the tense formative "θησ" tells us this is a Future Passive Indicative verb with one exception. The Aorist Passive third person plural ends with "-θησαν". In this case the sigma is part of the third person plural ending "σαν" and is not a part of the tense formative.

Table V-TF- 6a First Future Passive Indicative (of verbs with a theme vowel)

Note: * λυ + θησ + ε + σαι -> The second sigma is intervocalic and drops out -> λυ θησ ε αι -> Then the epsilon and alpha contract to an eta according to the rules for contraction -> λυ θησ ηι -> Then the iota subscripts when preceded with the long vowel α,η, or ω. -> λυθήσῃ

Table V-TF-7 Formation of Second Future Passive Indicative

As we stated with Table V-TF-6, there is no difference in meaning between a 1st Future Passive Indicative verb and a 2nd Future Passive Indicative verb. They are both Future Passive Indicative verbs. The Second Future Passive verb is built upon a Second Aorist Passive Tense stem.

Note:

- There is no augment, because the augment indicates past time in the indicative mood.

- The tense formative ησ is similar to the tense formative for the First Aorist Passive Indicative verb η but with the sigma (σ) for the future tense added on.

Table V-TF- 7a Second Future Passive Indicative (of verbs with a theme vowel)

Note 1:

*χαρ + ησ + ε + σαι -> The second sigma drops out because it is intervocalic. -> becoming χαρ ησ ε αι -> Then the epsilon and the alpha contract to an eta in accordance with the rules of contraction -> χαρ ησ η ι -> Finally, the iota subscripts under the long eta -> χαρήσῃ.

Table V-TF-8 Future Tense of εἰμί

The future tense for εἰμί is easy to learn when the student notices that it is made up of the future tense formative (εσ) + the connecting vowel + plus the Primary Middle/Passive Personal Ending.

- Note 1 - εσ ε σαι -> The second sigma (σ) is intervocalic and drops out becoming -> εσ ε αι. Then the episilon and the alpha contract to become an eta -> εσ ηι. Finally, the iota subscripts becoming εσῃ.

- Note 2 - The connecting vowel omicron (ο) drops out in the third person singular. This is the one exception to the pattern.

79.2.3 Examples

Example V-TF-9 Predictive Future

Predictive Future - The principle use of the Future tense in the indicative mood is to refer to unspecified action or event (aspect) that will occur in the future. It is therefore predictive in nature.

Table 2: V-TF-9 Predictive Future Example

John 6:44						
κἀγὼ	ἀναστήσω	αὐτὸν	ἐν	τῇ	ἐσχάτῃ	ἡμέρᾳ.
kagō	anastēsō	auton	en	tē	eschatē	hēmera
and I	I will raise up	him	in	the	last	day

and I will raise him up on the last day.

Example V-TF-10 Future Imperative

Future Imperative - The Future tense in the indicative mood may be used as a command instead of using the imperative mood.

Table 3: V-TF-10 Future Imperative

Romans 13:9								
οὐ φονεύσεις	οὐ κλέψεις	οὐκ ἐπιθυμήσεις	καὶ	εἴ		τις	ἑτέρα	ἐντολή
ou phoneuseis	ou klepseis	ouk epithymēseis	kai	ei		tis	hetera	entolē
Do not murder	do not steal	do not covet	and	if	(there is)	any	other	commandment

you shall not kill, you shall not steal, you shall not covet, and if (there is) any other commandment...

Example V-TF-11 Deliberative Future

Deliberative Future - The Future tense may be used to express consideration, deliberation, or thinking about the effects or consequences of a course of action. This often occurs in the form of a question.

Table 4: V-TF-11 Deliberative Future

Romans 6:1					
τί	οὖν	ἐροῦμεν?	ἐπιμένωμεν	τῇ	ἁμαρτίᾳ?
ti	oun	eroumen?	epimenōmen	tē	hamartia?
What	then	shall we say?	Are we to continue	in	sin?

What then will we say? Should we continue in the sin?

Example V-TF-12 Gnomic Future

The Gnomic Future is not used as a way to predict the future, but to describe an event that can reasonably be expected to occur in the future.

Table 5: V-TF-12 Gnomic Future

Matthew 6:21											
ὅπου	γάρ	ἐστιν	ὁ	θησαυρός	σου	ἐκεῖ	ἔσται	καὶ	ἡ	καρδία	σου.
hopou	gar	estin	ho	thēsauros	sou	ekei	estai	kai	hē	kardia	sou.
Where	for	it is	the	treasure	of you	there	it will be	also	the	heart	of you.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

Example V-TF-13 Participle

Participles in the future tense refer to an action or event that will occur in the future when compared to the time of the main verb for the sentence. In the New Testament, there are only 13 participles that occur in the future tense.

Table 6: V-TF-12 Participle

Matthew 27:49					
ἴδωμεν	εἰ	ἔρχεται	Ἡλείας	σώσων	αὐτόν.
idōmen	ei	erchetai	Eleias	sōsōn	auton.
Let us see	if	he will come	Elijah	saving	him

We may see whether Elijah comes to save him.

[Note: - In this verse ἔρχεται is in the present tense and σώσων is a future masculine plural participle modifying the coming of Elijah. The English translations are picking up on the future tense of the participle and applying it to the verb. In any event the future participle is referring to a time that is future from those who are speaking.]

TENSE IMPERFECT

80.1 Glossary

Imperfect is a verb tense-form in which the speaker describes an action as imperfective, (describing the action as a process or incomplete). The imperfect almost always describes actions which took place in the past. (e.g., he was eating, they were sleeping, she was running).

Example:

V-TI-1 Example of Imperfect Tense

Table 1: Example of Imperfect Tense John 6:2

ἠκολούθει	δὲ	αὐτῷ	ὄχλος	πολύς
ēkolouthei	de	auto	ochlos	polys
It was following	and	him	crowd	large

Now a great crowd was following him

80.2 Article

80.2.1 Overview

The Tense of a verb is used to indicate the speaker's perspective or viewpoint of an action or event:

Imperfect tense

> The imperfect only occurs in the Indicative mood. Generally, it refers to continuous (or incomplete) action in past time.

- The continuous aspect may be used to portray an event that has occurred in the past as it was in the process of occurring. See Example V-TI-5

- The continuous aspect may refer to an event that occurs on an iterative basis in the past, See Exampli V_TI-6 or

- The imperfect may be used to describe an event that generally occurs (or may be reasonably expected to occur), See Example V-TI-7 or

- Occurs over a long period of time, See Example V-TI-8, or

- even to an action that never occurs but is only contemplated. See Example V-TI-9

- The Inceptive imperfect describes an event as it begins to occur.

80.2.2 Form:

The basic form for a verb in the Imperfect indicative tense is given in Table 4 - Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs , and Table 5 - Master Verb Tense Chart - Present and Imperfect Tenses of the Master Verb paradigms.

See also:

- Table V-IT-1c Imperfect Active Tense verbs
- Table V-IT-1d Imperfect Middle/Passive Verbs
- Table V-AT-1 εἰμί Indicative
- Table V-AT-D1 δίδωμι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D1a δίδομι Middle/passive indicative
- Table V-AT-D2 ἵστημι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D2a ἵστημι Middle/passive indicative
- Table V-AT-D3 τίθημι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D3a τίθημι Middle/passive indicative

Formation of Verbs with a theme vowel in the Imperfect Tense:

- The Imperfect Active Indicative
- Imperfect Middle/passive Indicative, and
- The Imperfect Tense of εἴμι (I am)

80.2.3 Form

The Imperfect Active Indicative for a verb is formed by using:

Table V-TI-2 Formation of Imperfect Active Indicative for Thematic Verbs

Table V-TI-2a Formation of Imperfect Middle/Passive Active Indicative

The present tense stem for a verb may be determined by deleting the connecting vowel and personal ending from a present tense verb. If a verb has a prefix or an augment such as in the imperfect tense, the prefix or augment must also be deleted.

The Secondary Active personal endings are shown in Table V-TI-3 and in the upper right quadrant of the Verb Master Chart Table 4.

The Secondary middle/passive personal endings are shown in Table V-TI-3b below and the lower right quadrant (Quadrant 4) of the Verb Master Chart Table 4.

Table V-TI – 3 -Quadrant 2 of the Master Chart Table 4 Secondary Active endings

[Note] The "-" in the 3 person singular indicates that no personal ending is used.

Table V-TI-3b - Quadrant 4 of the Master Chart Table 4 Secondary Middle/Passive endings

[Note] * In almost every case the sigma (σ) drops out because it is between two vowels. The resulting two vowels contract. "ε" and "ο" will contract to "ου" as in ελύου.

ε + λυ + ε + σο then becomes

ε + λυ + ε + ο (the sigma drops out)

ε + λυ + ου (the ε and ο contract to form ου)

Formation of The Imperfect Tense of εἴμι (I am)

80.2.4 Imperfect tense – Examples

Example: V-TI-5- past event in the process of occurring

- The continuous aspect of the imperfect tense may be used to portray an event that has occurred in the past as if it were in the process of occurring.

The most frequent use of the imperfect tense is to describe a continuing action that occurred in the past. It is therefore described as continuous (or imperfective). Continuous action is action that is viewed as ongoing, continuous, or as a process from the speaker's point of view.

Table 2: Example V-TI-5 John 7:30

ἐζήτουν	οὖν	αὐτὸν	πιάσαι
ezētoun	oun	auton	piasai
They were seeking	therefore	him	to seize/arrest

Therefore, they were seeking to arrest him

Example V-TI-6 - Imperfect - Iterative basis

- The continuous aspect may refer to an event that occurs on an iterative basis in the past

The iterative imperfect describes repeated action occurring in the past. These repeated actions may have been repeated by a single person (or agent) or multiple persons (or agents).

Table 3: Example V-TI-6 Acts 3:2

καί	τις	ἀνὴρ	...	ὃν	**ἐτίθουν**	καθ'	ἡμέραν	πρὸς	τὴν	θύραν
kai	tis	anēr	...	hon	etithoun	kath'	hēmeran	pros	tēn	thyran
and	a certain	man	...	whom	they were placing	every	day	before	the	door/ entrance

And a certain man ... whom each day they placed at the gate

Example V-TI-7 - Imperfect - Event that generally occurs

- The imperfect may be used to describe an event that generally occurs (or may be reasonably expected to occur).

Similar to the iterative imperfect, the imperfect may also be used to describe an event that generally occurs (or may be reasonably expected to occur).

Table 4: Example V-TI-7 Mark 15:6

κατὰ	δὲ	ἑορτὴν	ἀπέλυεν	αὐτοῖς	ἕνα	δέσμιον
kata	de	heortēn	apelyen	autois	hena	desmion
according to/during	and	festival	he usually released	to them	one	prisoner

Now during the festival, he usually released to them one prisoner...

[Note:] In this case the term "usually" was used to reflect the use of the imperfect "describing an event that generally occurs".

Example V- TI-8- Imperfect - Event over long period of time

- The Imperfect tense used to describe an event that occurs over a long period of time.

The imperfect tense may be used to describe an event that occurs over an extended period of time.

Table 5: Example V-TI-8 Romans 6:17

ὅτι	ἦτε	δοῦλοι	τῆς	ἁμαρτίας	ὑπηκούσατε	δὲ	ἐκ	καρδίας
hoti	ēte	douloi	tēs	hamartias	hypēkousate	de	ek	kardias
because	you were continually	slaves	of	sin	you obeyed	but	from	[the] heart

For you were slaves of sin, but you listened from [the] heart.

Example V-TI-9 - Imperfect - event only wished to occur

- Imperfect tense may be used for an event that is only thought about, but that never occurs.

Table 6: Example V-TI-9 Luke 1:59

καὶ	ἐκάλουν	αὐτὸ	ἐπὶ	τῷ	ὀνόματι	τοῦ	πατρὸς	αὐτοῦ	Ζαχαρίαν
kai	ekaloun	auto	epi	tō	onomati	tou	patros	autou	Zacharian
and	they were going to call	him	after	the	name	of	father	his	Zacharia

They were going to call him after the name of his father, Zechariah.

Example V-TI-10 Inceptive Imperfect

- The Inceptive imperfect describes an event as it begins to occur.

Table 7: Example V-TI-10 Matthew 5:2

καὶ	ἀνοίξας	τὸ	στόμα	αὐτοῦ	**ἐδίδασκεν**	αὐτοὺς
kai	anoixas	to	stoma	autou	edidasken	autous
and	having opened	the	mouth	his	he began teaching	them

And having opened his mouth, he taught them

> Or, in order to reflect the inceptive aspect of the imperfect tense in this instance, it could be translated "he began teaching them", or "he began to teach them"

EIGHTYONE

TENSE NO_TENSE_STATED

81.1 Glossary

81.2 Article

TENSE PERFECT

82.1 Glossary

Perfect is the verb tense-form used to describe the present state (e.g., you are forgiven) of what is being described or to describe something which took place in the past (e.g., we have eaten, they have traveled). It is often thought of as a completed action that has results which continue into the present time of the speaker.

Example: V-PT-1

Table 1: Matthew 3:2

μετανοεῖτε	ἤγγικεν	γὰρ	ἡ	Βασιλεία	τῶν	Οὐρανῶν.
metanoeite	ēngiken	gar	hē	Basileia	tōn	Ouranōn.
Repent	is near	for	the	Kingdom	of the	Heavens

"Repent, for the kingdom of the heavens is near." Or "Repent for the kingdom of heaven has come near."

[Note]

- The translation of "has come near" places an emphasis on the "completed action in the past" aspect, while the translation "is near" picks up on the stative aspect.

- The English language also has difficulty picking up on another nuance in the Greek text. The placement of the perfect verb up front puts an emphasis on the nearness. "Repent, for NEAR is the kingdom of heaven."

82.2 Article

The Tense of a verb is used to indicate the speaker's perspective or viewpoint of:

1. Aspect - the kind of action of the verb. The kind of action may be

   - unspecified (also known as simple or simply completed),

   - continuous (also described as imperfective), or

   - completed with an ongoing effect, or

   - Stative - The Perfect tense is a stative tense. It is used to express a state of being. Therefore, aspect is used to express the present state or condition rather than the action that occurred to arrive at the present condition. A past action is implied by use of the perfect tense.

2. Time - the time of action

   - The principle use of the Perfect tense in the indicative mood is to express the state of being of its object at the time the speaker is speaking.

- There is no implication that the current state will continue into the future based on the use of the Perfect tense.

The Perfect Tense occurs 1,574 times in the New Testament (compared to 11,572 for the Present Tense; 11,826 for the Aorist Tense; and 1,634 for the future tense. This is very close to the 1,691occurrences of the Imperfect Tense.).

The translator should give special attention when the Perfect Tense is used (compared to the Present Tense or the Aorist Tense) and try to note the significance of the meaning that is being conveyed by use of Perfect Tense.

The Perfect Tense is principally used to place an emphasis on the results or present condition that now exists from the past action. This condition may have come into being as a result of a single action in the past or as a result of a series of actions. As already stated, there is no implication (based on the use of the perfect tense) that these results will continue into the future, merely that they are still present at the time the speaker makes the statement. In V-TP-7d Imagined Event we give an example where the people only imagined that an event had occurred; and their perception was incorrect.

Based on the context, the use of the Perfect Tense may be classified into four separate categories:

1) Intensive Perfect - The predominate use of the Perfect tense is referred to as the Intensive Perfect. Because the Perfect is a stative tense, the focus is on the resultant state as opposed to the completed act. Depending upon the context, there may be (1) a greater emphasis on the present condition; or (2) a greater emphasis on the completed action that resulted in the present condition in which case the use of a helping verb is appropriate. [See Example Intensive Perfect]

2) Gnomic Perfect - The Gnomic Perfect refers to a state that results from an action that can occur at any time (an event that can be assumed to occur because it happens so frequently). [See Example Gnomic Perfect]

3) Aoristic Perfect - In some cases it appears that the Perfect Tense is being used with the same meaning as the Aorist tense - to indicate an action that occurred in the past. However, some grammarians suggest that the translator use caution in coming to this conclusion. If the verb in the perfect tense occurs with other verbs in the aorist tense, the translator must ask why is this verb in the perfect tense? What seems to be a simple statement may be placed in the perfect tense to dramatize or place a special emphasis on this event. [See Example Aoristic Perfect]

4) Present Force Perfect - It is frequently suggested that Οἶδα, although in the Perfect Tense, is used with a Present Tense meaning. Οἶδα is a stative verb and so lends itself to the Perfect Tense, however other stative verbs appear in the Present Tense such as εἰμι. These verbs could be classified as an Intensive Perfect with a greater emphasis on the present condition. [See Example Present Force Perfect]

82.2.1 Form:

The basic form for a verb in the indicative Perfect tense is given in Verb Master Table 4-Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs and Verb-Master Table 8-The Perfect Tenses of the Master paradigm.

See also:

- Table V-IT-4 Indicative Verbs built on the Perfect and Perfect Middle/Passive Stem
- Table V-AT-D1 δίδωμι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D1a δίδομι Middle/Passive indicative
- Table V-AT-D2 ἵστημι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D3 τίθημι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D3a τίθημι Middle/Passive indicative

The Paradigms also contain forms of verbs in the Perfect tense for the subjunctive mood, imperative mood, participles, and infinitives. See Paradigms:

- Verbs Subjunctive,

- Verbs Imperative and Table V-MT-2a Middle-Passive Uncontracted Verbs,

- Verbs Infinitives, and

- Participles.

In this section we will describe the formation of Perfect Verbs with a theme vowel in:

- The 1st and 2nd Perfect Active Indicative

- Perfect Middle/Passive Indicative

- Athematic Perfect Indicative

Form - First and Second Perfect Active Indicative for Thematic Verbs

As with the Aorist Tense, The Koine Greek language has two ways of forming the Perfect Tense.

- 1st Perfect, and

- 2nd Perfect

There is no difference in meaning between a 1st Perfect verb and a 2nd Perfect Verb. They are both perfect verbs. If it helps, you may think of it as a room (the Perfect Tense room) and the Perfect Tense room has two doors. It does not matter which door you use to enter the room. In both cases the word is now in the Perfect Tense room. The vast majority of Perfect verbs in the New Testament are 1st Perfect Verbs.

- 1st Perfect verbs use the same verbal stem that is used in the present tense.

- 2nd Perfect verbs are first formed by making a change to the present tense stem for the verb. The change in the stem let's the reader know that it is a 2nd Perfect verb.

Table V-PT-2 Perfect Active Indicative Verbs

Built on the verb λύω (I loose) and γράφω (I write)

Table V-PT-2a Formation of First Perfect Active Indicative Verb

The 1st Perfect Active Indicative for a verb is formed by using:

1. Reduplication - or duplicating the first consonant of the tense stem for the verb (for verbs that begin with a single consonant) and adding and epsilon.

2. Plus The first perfect active tense stem

3. Plus the tense formative (κα)

4. Plus the primary active personal ending.

Note on Reduplication:

(a) for verbs that begin with a vowel the beginning vowel lengthens and becomes:

- an eta (η) for verbs beginning with an alpha (α) or an epsilon (ε), or

- an omega (ω) for verbs beginning with an omicron (ο)

  - α -> η

  - ε -> η

- o -> ω

  This is known as "vocalic reduplication" and is the same as with the aorist or imperfect tenses. The tense formative "κα" will make it clear that this is a perfect tense verb and not an aorist or imperfect tense verb. For example: αἴρω -> ἦρκα (I have raised up)

(b) Exception: Verbs that begin with a diphthong may or may not lengthen. For Example: εὐλογέω -> εὐλόγηκα (I have blessed)

(c) Reduplication will cause the consonant to lose its aspiration for aspirated verbs that begin with a phi(φ), xi (χ), or theta (θ) in the third column of the Square of Stops Table (or see below this paragraph). Therefore, the phi will change to a pi (π), the xi to a kappa (κ), and the theta to a tau (τ). This makes it easier to pronounce. The consonants in the first two columns (Voiceless and Voiced) will reduplicate like any other consonant. For Example: [the third column verb φιλέω -> πεφίληκα (I have loved)] and [the first column verb καλέω -> κέκληκα (I have called)].

(d) For compound verbs, the reduplication will take place after the prefix with the verbal part of the compound verb. For example: καταβαίνω -> καταβέβηκα (I have come down).

(e) Contract verbs will lengthen the contract vowel as in the case of φιλέω in paragraph c) above. The epsilon lengthened to an eta. (φιλέω -> πεφίληκα (I have loved).

(f) Perfect verb stems that begin with two consonants, usually prefix an epsilon. For example γινώσκω -> ἔγνωκα (I have known/ I have come to know) or ἐγνώκαμεν. In this case the presence of the tense formative "κα" will inform the reader that this is a perfect verb and the " ε" at the beginning of the verb is a reduplication. Therefore, this is not an imperfect or aorist verb.

Form - V-PT-3 The Second Perfect Active Indicative verb:

There are only a few Second Perfect verbs in the New Testament from 26 different stems. Some of the most frequent are:

- ἀκούω -> ἀκήκοα (I have heard)
- γίνομαι -> γέγονα (I have become)
- γράφω -> γέγραφα (I have written)
- ἔρχομαι -> ἐλήλυθα (I have gone)
- λαμβάνω -> εἴληφα (I have received)
- πείθω -> πέποιθα (I have persuaded), and
- οἶδα (I know) which is a perfect verb that is used in Koine Greek with a present tense meaning.

Table V-PT-3 Formation of Second Perfect Active Indicative Verb

V-PT-4 Formation of Perfect Middle/Passive Indicative Verb

Perfect Middle/Passive indicative verbs are formed from the Perfect Middle/Passive tense stem.

There is NO Tense formative and NO connecting vowel for verbs in the Perfect Middle/Passive indicative tense.

The Perfect Middle tense is identified by the reduplication + and absence of a connecting vowel + The Quadrant 3 Middle/Passive Personal Ending attached directly to the Perfect Tense Stem.

There are no Second Perfects in the Middle/Passive because there is no tense formative.

Table V-PT-5 Indicative Verbs with a Theme Vowel Based on the Perfect Middle/Passive Tense Stem

V-PT-6 Formation of Athematic Perfect Indicative Verbs

As with the formation of Perfect verbs with a theme vowel:

- Athematic verbs reduplicate the initial consonant with an epsilon. and
- Use κα for a tense formative

[Νοτε] * Because there is no vowel between the tense formative and the Personal ending, the sigma does not drop out and we have the true second person singular Middle/Passive ending.

** There are no occurrences for ἵστημι in the Perfect Middle/Passive Indicative.

82.2.2 Examples:

Intensive Perfect- V-PT-7a Greater Emphasis Current State

The Perfect Tense places an emphasis on the results or present state of the subject as a result from an action completed in the past. This is the most common use of the Perfect Tense. It is referred to as the Intensive Perfect. However, the use of the Perfect Tense does NOT imply that the results will continue forever. This type of conclusion must be made on the basis of other factors.

Table 2: Example V-PT-7a Intensive Perfect Tense - greater emphasis on the Current State

Mark 5:34				
ἡ	πίστις	σου	σέσωκέν	σε
hē	pistis	sou	sesōken	se
The	faith	of you	it has healed	you

Your faith has healed you.

Intensive Perfect V-PT-7b Emphasis Completed Action

Table 3: Example V-PT-7b Intensive Perfect Tense - greater emphasis on the completed action that resulted in current state.

1 Jn 1:3						
ὃ	ἑωράκαμεν	καὶ	ἀκηκόαμεν	ἀπαγγέλλομεν	καὶ	ὑμῖν
ho	heōrakamen	kai	akēkoamen	apangellomen	kai	hymin
What	we have seen	and	we have heard	we declare	also	to you

What we have seen and heard, we declare also to you.

Intensive Perfect - V-PT-7c Emphasis Current Condition Only

Acts 24:7 is an example of the emphasis on the present state of Paul as a result of his having been placed in prison in the past. His current state is "imprisoned." It is also clear from the context, there is a possibility of his release by the next governor. The emphasis is on his current condition as a result of past action, not on what may or may not happen in the future.

Table 4: Example V-PT-7c Current Condition only

Acts 24:27					
ὁ	Φῆλιξ	κατέλιπε	τὸν	Παῦλον	δεδεμένον
ho	Phēlix	katelipe	ton	Paulon	dedemenon
The	Felix	left	the	Paul	bound/imprisoned

Felix left Paul imprisoned.

Intensive Perfect - V-PT-7d Imagined Event

The use of the perfect tense is based on the view point of the speaker. The speaker's viewpoint may or may not be true.

Table 5: Example V-PT-7d Imagined Event

Mark 6:14							
ἔλεγον	ὅτι	Ἰωάννης	ὁ	βαπτίζων	ἐγήγερται	ἐκ	νεκρῶν
elegon	hoti	Iōannēs	ho	baptizōn	egēgertai	ek	nekrōn
They were saying	that	John	the	one who baptizes	has been raised	from	(the) dead

They (some) were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead"

Gnomic Perfect - V-PT-8

The Gnomic Perfect refers to a state that could result from an action that could occur at any time.

Table 6: Example V-PT-8 Gnomic Perfect

Rm 7.2															
ἡ	γὰρ	ὕπανδρος	γυνὴ	τῷ	ζῶντι	ἀνδρὶ	δέδεται	νόμῳ	ἐὰν	δὲ	ἀποθάνῃ	ἀνήρ	κατήργηται	τοῦ	νόμου
hē	gar	hy-pan-dros	gynē	tō	zōnti	an-dri	dede-tai	nomō	ean	de	apotha-nē	anēr	katērgē-tai	tou	nomou
The	for	mar-ried	woman	to the	while liv-ing	hus-band	is bound	by law	if	but	he dies	the man	she is re-leased	from the	law

For the married woman remains bound by law to the living husband, but if the husband dies, she has been released from the law

Aoristic Perfect V-PT-9

In some cases it appears that the Perfect Tense is being used with the same meaning as the Aorist tense. It simply refers to an action that occurred in the past. However, some grammarians suggest that one use caution in coming to this conclusion. If the verb in the perfect tense occurs with other verbs in the aorist tense, the translator must ask why is this verb in the perfect tense? What, at first glance, seems to be a simple statement about an event that occurred in the past, may be placed in the perfect tense to dramatize or place a special emphasis on this event.

Table 7: Example V-PT-9 Aoristic Perfect

Rev 7:14						
καὶ	εἴρηκα	αὐτῷ	κύριέ	μου	σὺ	οἶδας
kai	eirēka	autō	kyrie	mou	sy	oidas
and	I said	to him	Lord	of me	you	you know

And I said to him, "My lord, you know."

Present Force Perfect V-PT-10

Table 8: Example V-PT-10 Present Force Perfect

Mark 14:71				
οὐκ	οἶδα	τὸν	ἄνθρωπον	τοῦτον
ouk	oida	ton	anthrōpon	touton
not	I know	the	man	this

I do not know this man

EIGHTYTHREE

TENSE PLUPERFECT

83.1 Glossary

Pluperfect is the verb tense-form a speaker can use to describe the state of a completed action that was in existance at some point in the past. (e.g., we had eaten, they had traveled).

83.1.1 Example V-T-PL-1 - Pluperfect Tense

Table 1: Pluperfect Tense Matthew 12:46

ἡ	μήτηρ	καὶ	οἱ	ἀδελφοὶ	αὐτοῦ	ἱστήκεισαν	ἔξω
hē	mētēr	kai	hoi	adelphoi	autou	histēkeisan	exō
the	mother	and	the	brothers	of him	had stood	outside

His mother and his brothers had stood outside

83.2 Article

83.2.1 Background

The Pluperfect tense has the same meaning as the Perfect Tense, except that it only brings the results of an action up to a selected time in the past.

Both the Pluperfect Tense and the Perfect Tense describe the state resulting from a previous action or series of actions. The Pluperfect describes an event that was completed in the past and had results that existed in the past from the speaker's point of view. On the other hand, the Perfect Tense, brings the results all the way up to the time the speaker is speaking.

Use of the Pluperfect Tense does not indicate if the results still exist at the time the speaker is speaking only that they existed at some point in the past.

The Perfect Tense is usually translated "I have believed", the Pluperfect Tense is usually translated "I had believed." The Pluperfect only occurs 88 times in the New Testament.

83.2.2 Categories

Based on context, the Pluperfect Tense may be classified into the following categories:

1. Intensive Pluperfect - stress is on the stative result of some action that occurred at some point in the past prior to the time of the speaker. The emphasis is therefore on the results that occurred. [See Intensive Pluperfect]

2. Consummative Pluperfect (also known as the Extensive Pluperfect) – stress is on the process that led to the results. [See Consumative Pluperfect]

3. Pluperfect used as Past Tense – Sometimes the Pluperfect is used in such a manner that it seems to simply refer to an event that occurred in the past. [See Pluperfect Used as Past Tense]

4. Periphrastic Construction - Instead of using the Pluperfect Tense, the meaning of the Pluperfect is also found in the Greek text by using two verbs (εἰμί in the indicative or imperfect tense combined with a Perfect Participle). This is known as a Periphrastic Construction. [See Periphrastic Construction]

83.2.3 Listing of Pluperfect Verbs

The following is a list of the Pluperfect Verbs in the New Testament.

- ᾔδειν – (I knew, or had known) – occurs 32 times
- εἰστήκη – (I stood) – occurs 15 times
- ἐληλύθει (had come) – occurs 11 times

βάλλω	Βεβλήκειν	I throw/cast		γίνομαι	(ε)γεγόνειν	I am/ become
γινώσκω	ἐγνώκειν	I know		δίδωμι	(ε)δεδώκειν	I give
εἴθω	εἰώθειν	I am accustomed		ἐπιπείθω	ἐπεποίθειν	I convince/ persuade
κρίνω	κεκρίκειν	I judge		λέγω	εἰρήκειν	I say
μένω	μεμενήκειν	I remain/abide		ὁράω	ἑωράκειν	I see
πιστεύω	πεπιστεύκειν	I believe		ποιέω	πεποιήκειν	I do/make
συναρπάζω	σθνηρπάκειν	I seize				

83.3 Form

The basic form for a verb in the Pluperfect tense is given in Verb Master Table 4-Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs of the Master paradigm.

See also:

Table V-IT-6 Pluperfect Active and Middle Indicative Thematic Verbs

In this section we will describe the formation of the Active and Middle Pluperfect Verbs with a theme vowel.

- 1st Pluperfect Active Indicative Verb
- 2nd Pluperfect Active Indicative Verb
- Middle Pluperfect Indicative Verb
- Pluperfect of οἶδα (I know, understand) - ᾔδειν

83.3.1 Formation of the 1st Pluperfect Active Indicative Verb with a Theme Vowel:

Table T-PL-2 Formation of 1st Pluperfect Active Indicative For Thematic Verbs

- [Note] The augment is often missing.

The 1st Pluperfect Active Indicative for thematic verbs is formed by using:

1. An augment which may or may not be present. This is why it is shown in parenthesis.

2. Reduplication (or duplicating the first consonant of the tense stem of the verb for verbs that begin with a single consonant) and adding an epsilon (ε).

3. Plus the first perfect active tense stem

4. Plus the tense formative (κ)

5. Plus the connecting vowel (ει)

6. Plus the secondary active personal ending (quadrant 2) Paradigms Master Table 4 Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs

Table V-T-PL-3 [1st Pluperfect Active Indicative Verb]

Based on λύω (I loose).

83.3.2 Formation – The Second Pluperfect Active Indicative Verb with a Theme Vowel:

Table V-T-PL-4 Formation of Second Pluperfect Active Indicative Verb based on ἔρχομαι (I go)

[Note]: There is no tense formative for the 2nd Pluperfect as is the case with the 2nd Perfect verb. The use of the 2nd Perfect tense stem notifies the reader that this is a 2nd Pluperfect verb.

Table V-T-PL-5 [2nd Pluperfect Active Indicative based on ἔρχομαι (I go)].

[Note] Only the 3rd person singular and 3rd person plural appear in the New Testament.

83.3.3 Formation of the Middle Pluperfect Active Indicative Verb with a Theme Vowel

Table V-T-PL-6 [Formation of the Middle Pulperfect Active Indicative verb based on λύω (I loose).]

[Note]:

- The augment is often missing. This is why it is in parenthesis.
- There is no tense formative nor connecting vowel.
- The Quadrant 4 personal ending is attached directly to the perfect Middle/Passive stem.

Table V-T-PL-7 [Pluperfect Middle/Passive Indicative Thematic]

83.3.4 Table V-T-PL-8 [Pluperfect of οἶδα]

The Pluperfect of οἶδα (I know, understand) - ἤδειν

83.4 Examples

83.4.1 Intensive Pluperfect

With the Intensive Pluperfect, stress is on the results that existed from some action that occurred in the past prior to the time of the speaker. The emphasis is therefore on the results that occurred.

Example V-T-PL-9

Table 2: V-T-PL-9 John 6:17

σκοτία	ἤδη	ἐγεγόνει	καὶ	οὔπω	ἐληλύθει	πρὸς	αὐτοὺς	ὁ	Ἰησοῦς.
skotia	ēdē	egegonei	kai	oupō	elēlythei	pros	autous	ho	Iēsous.
dark	already	it had become	and	not yet	he had come	to	them	the	Jesus.

darkness had already happened, but Jesus had not yet come to them.

83.4.2 Consummative Pluperfect

The Consummative Pluperfect is also known as the Extensive Pluperfect. With the Consummative Pluperfect stress is on the process that led to the results.

Example V-T-PL-10 John 4:8

Table 3: V-T-PL-10 John 4:8

οἱ	γὰρ	μαθηταὶ	αὐτοῦ	ἀπεληλύθεισαν	εἰς	τὴν	πόλιν	ἵνα	τροφὰς	ἀγοράσωσιν.
hoi	gar	mathētai	autou	apelēlytheisan	eis	tēn	polin	hina	trophas	agorasōsin.
the	for	disciples	his	had gone	into	the	city	so that	food	they could buy.

for his disciples had gone away into the city so that they might buy food.

83.4.3 Pluperfect used as Past Tense

Sometimes the Pluperfect is used in such a manner that it seems to simply refer to an event that occurred in the past.

Example V-T-PL-11 John 1:35

Table 4: V-T-PL-11 John 1:35

τῇ	ἐπαύριον	πάλιν	ἱστήκει	ὁ	Ἰωάννης
tē	epaurion	palin	histēkei	ho	Iōannēs
on the	next day	again	he stood	the	John

The next day, John was standing again with two of his disciples.

83.4.4 Periphrastic construction.

The meaning of the Pluperfect is also found in the Greek text by using two verbs (εἰμί in the indicative or imperfect tense combined with a perfect participle). The use of the "helping" verb (εἰμί) along with a perfect participle is known as a periphrastic construction.

The word-for-word translation below tries to pick up on the imperfect helping verb (ἦν) combined with the perfect participle (ἑστὼς). The time of the Periphrastic construction also affects the time of the present participle (παρακαλῶν) and so we included the helping verb "was" in our word-for-word translation.

Example V-T-PL-12 Acts 16:9

Table 5: V-T-PL-12 Acts 16:9

ἀνὴρ	Μακεδών	τις	ἦν	ἑστὼς	καὶ	παρακαλῶν	αὐτὸν
anēr	Makedōn	tis	ēn	hestōs	kai	parakalōn	auton
man	from Macedonia	certain	had been	standing	and	was exhorting/calling	him

A certain man of Macedonia was standing and calling him. or (A certain man of Macedonia had been standing and was calling him.)

TENSE PRESENT

84.1 Glossary

Present is a verb tense-form which a speaker uses to describe an action as imperfective (either continuous or incomplete), and is often used to depict an action as being in process (e.g., I am running, she is reading, they are sleeping).

The present tense in the indicative mood is the only way to describe an action that is taking place at the time the speaker is speaking. When the present tense is indicating an event occurring at the present time, it may be indicating continuing and ongoing action, but may be simply indicating an event taking place at the time the speaker is speaking.

The present tense may also be used for dramatic effect to bring the hearer into the time the action occurred.

Example: Table VTP-1 Present Tense Verb

Table 1: VTP-1 Verb Present Tense John 15:27

ἀπ’	ἀρχῆς	μετ’	ἐμοῦ	ἐστε
ap’	archēs	met’	emou	este
from	beginning	with	me	you are

you are with me from the beginning.

[Note] In this example, the present tense in the indicative mood indicates both present time and continuous action. The continuous aspect of the present tense is supported by the phrase "from the beginning."

84.2 Article

84.2.1 Overview

The Tense of a verb is used to indicate the speaker's perspective or viewpoint of:

1. Aspect - the kind of action of the verb. The kind of action may be continuous (also described as imperfective), completed (or simple), or completed with an ongoing effect.

- Present tense - Aspect is used primarily to indicate the kind of action as (continuous or incomplete) in moods other than the indicative.

- It may indicate the action as continuous or incomplete in the present time depending on the context of the verb.

- The continuous aspect may also refer to an event that occurs on an iterative basis, or an event that generally occurs (or may be reasonably expected to occur).

  - Note: Iterative refers to an event or process that repeats itself, or happens from time to time.

2. Time - the time of action (only in the indicative mood).

- Present tense - Time - The use of the Present tense in the indicative mood is the only way to indicate action occurring at the time the speaker is speaking. Therefore, the time of the action takes on a primary role when used with the indicative mood. The Present indicative may describe simply: 1) an event occurring in the present (simple action with no indication of continuity) or 2) an ongoing event occurring in the present.

- Dramatic Effect - An event that has occurred in the past or that will occur in the future may be portrayed in the present indicative for dramatic effect.

84.2.2 Form:

The basic form for a verb in the present tense indicative is given in Tables 4 - Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs , and Table 5 - Master Verb Tense Chart - Present and Imperfect Tenses of the Master Verb paradigms .

See also:

- Table V-IT-1a Present Active Tense verbs
- Table V-IT-1b Present Middle/Passive Verbs
- Table V-AT-1 εἰμί Indicative
- Table V-AT-D1 δίδωμι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D1a δίδομι Middle/passive indicative
- Table V-AT-D2 ἵστημι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D2a ἵστημι middle/passive indicative
- Table V-AT-D3 τίθημι (Active Indicative)
- Table V-AT-D3a τίθημι middle/passive indicative

The Paradigms also contain forms of verbs in the present tense for the Subjunctive Mood , Imperative Mood , Participles , and Infinitives .

Verbs in the Optative Mood are so rare a paradigm table was not created for them. There are only 70 occurrences of the optative mood in the New Testament.

In this section we will describe the formation of Verbs with a theme vowel in:

- The Present Active Indicative
- Present Middle/Passive Indicative, and
- The Present Tense of εἴμι (I am) because of its frequency in the New Testament

Form - Present Active Indicative for Thematic Verbs

The Present Active Indicative for a verb is formed by using:

Form - Present Middle/Passive indicative verb is formed by using:

The connecting vowel (omicron, or epsilon) and the primary personal endings for the present indicative are shown in the left two quadrants of the Verb Master chart Table 4 under the column labeled as Primary endings:

- The present tense stem for a verb may be determined by deleting the connecting vowel and personal ending from a verb. If a verb has a prefix or an augment such as in the aorist or perfect tenses, the prefix or augment must also be deleted.

- The Primary Active personal endings are shown in the chart below and in the upper left quadrant (Quadrant 1) of the Verb Master Chart Table 4.

- The Primary middle/passive personal endings are shown in the chart below and the lower left quadrant (Quadrant 3) of Verb Master Chart Table 4.

Table VTP-4 Primary and Secondary Endings of Verbs

[Note]

- The "-" indicates there is no personal ending.

- The omega (ω) at the end of the first person singular verb is the lengthened connecting vowel "o" which lengthens to an "ω".

- Third person plural ending - the "ν" drops out because it is followed by a sigma and the connecting vowel "o" lengthens to compensate for the missing "ν". Therefore, λυ + ο + νσι becomes λυ + ου + σι -> λύουσι

Table VTP-5- εἴμι Present Indicative

84.2.3 Present tense – Aspect

Aspect refers to the type of Action.

- Action can be viewed as simple (also referred to as "punctiliar" or "undefined"). When viewed as "simple" no comment is being made regarding if the action is continuous or a process. It simply states that the event occurred. (Simple Action is generally associated with the Aorist tense, and Future tense, but can also occur in the present indicative.)

- Action can be viewed as continuous (or imperfective). Continuous action is action that is viewed as ongoing, continuous, or as a process from the speaker's point of view. (Continuous Action is generally associated with the Present and Imperfect tense.)

- Action can be portrayed or viewed as perfective or as an event that occurred at some point of time in the past, but with an ongoing effect. (Perfective action is generally associated with the Perfect and Pluperfect tense)

The present tense is used to express the continuous aspect in all moods other than the indicative mood. In the indicative mood, the Aspect may be simple or continuous.

In the present time:

Simple Present (in the present time)

- Simple-Present describes action in the present time. The "Simple Present" could be described as viewing an action as occurring instantaneous or viewing a single event (which may have occured quickly or over a period of time) as a whole.

Table 2: Table VTP-6 Simple Present

Acts 25:11	
Καίσαρα	ἐπικαλοῦμαι
Kaisara	epikaloumai
to Caesar	I appeal

I appeal to Caesar.

Progressive Present

Continuous action may be in the form of:

(1) a short period of continuous action in the present time – (something that is now occurring),

(2) describe ongoing continuous action over a longer period of time, or

(3) action that occurs on an iterative basis (or repeatedly occurs).

(1) Continuous action over a short period of time in the present time.

Table 3: Table VTP-7 Continuous action over a short period of time

Mark 1:37		
πάντες	ζητοῦσίν	σε
pantes	zētousin	se
all	they are seeking	you

Everyone is seeking you.

(2) Continuous action over a longer period of time.

Table 4: Table VTP-8 Continuous action over a long period of time
John 3:36

ὁ	πιστεύων	εἰς	τὸν	Υἱὸν	ἔχει	ζωὴν	αἰώνιον
ho	pisteuōn	eis	ton	Huion	echei	zōēn	aiōnion
the	one who believes	in	the	Son	he has	life	eternal

The one who believes in the Son has eternal life

[Note:] In this example both the present tense participle πιστεύων and the verb ἔχει are in the present tense and indicate continuous action over a period of time.

(3) Iterative Present – action that happens repeatedly or an event that reoccurs at intervals.

The following two examples from the same verse are examples of the Iterative Present.

- The first example ἐθίητε is an example of the Iterative Present tense in the subjunctive mood.

- The second example καταγγέλλω is an example of the present tense in the indicative mood.

Table 5: Table VTP-9a Iterative Present Tense 1 Cor. 11:26a

ὁσάκις	γὰρ	ἐὰν	ἐσθίητε	τὸν	ἄρτον	τοῦτον
hosakis	gar	ean	esthiēte	ton	arton	touton
as often as	for	whenever	you eat	the	bread	this

For as often as you eat this bread

Table 6: Table VTP-9b Iterative Present Tense 1 Cor. 11:26c

θάνατον	τοῦ	Κυρίου	καταγγέλλετε
thanaton	tou	Kyriou	katangellete
death	of the	Lord	you are proclaiming

you proclaim the death of the Lord or [it could be translated you are proclaiming the death of the Lord.]

Customary (or General) Present

The Customary Present is used to describe events that regularly occur or may be reasonably expected to occur.

The time element is remote or removed because the action described is something that occurs regularly without respect to time. It may occur continuously or regularly on an iterative basis.

Iterative basis example:

Table 7: Table VTP-10a Customary Present (Iterative) Matt. 7:17

πᾶν	δένδρον	ἀγαθὸν	καρποὺς	καλοὺς	ποιεῖ
pan	dendron	agathon	karpous	kalous	poiei
every	tree	good	fruit	good	it makes

every good tree produces good fruit

Continuous example:

Table 8: Table VTP-10b Customary Present (Continuous) 2 Cor. 9:7

ἱλαρὸν	γὰρ	δότην	**ἀγαπᾷ**	ὁ	Θεός.
hilaron	gar	dotēn	agapa	ho	Theos.
Cheerful	for	giver	he loves	the	God

for God loves a cheerful giver.

84.2.4 Dramatic Effect

For dramatic effect the present tense may be used to portray:

- Historical Present - an event that occured in the past, but is portrayed as occuring in the present

- Future Present - an event that will occur in the future, but is portrayed as occuring in the present.

Historic Present

Simple Action that occurred in the past but is portrayed with the present tense (instead of the expected aorist or imperfect tense). This has the dramatic effect of moving the reader into the time that the event occurred. It portrays the event as now occurring. Frequently the Historic Present is used with the verb λέγω. Most English versions will translate Historic Present verbs with a verb in the past tense.

The following example is from the story of when a person with leprosy came to Jesus to ask for healing. The narrative reads as though we were right there watching the scene.

Table 9: VTP-11a Mark 1:40

καὶ	ἔρχεται	πρὸς	αὐτὸν	λεπρὸς	...	καὶ	λέγει	αὐτῷ
kai	erchetai	pros	auton	lepros	...	kai	legei	autō
and	he is coming	to	him	leper	...	and	he is saying	to him

And a leper comes to him ... and says to him

(Then Jesus moved with compassion responds to the leper.)

Table 10: VTP-11b Mark 1:41

καὶ	λέγει	αὐτῷ
kai	legei	autō
and	he is saying	to him

and says to him

Future Present

The Future Present is used to describe Simple Action that will occur in the future. This use of the present tense views the probability of a future event as so certain that it portrays the event as already occurring in the present time. As such it adds an emphasis on the certainty of the event portrayed.

Example: Jesus speaking of His return:

Table 11: VTP-12 Rev. 22:20

ναί	ἔρχομαι	ταχύ
nai	erchomai	tachy
yes	I am coming	quickly

Yes! I am coming quickly

84.2.5 Examples of Present tense in non-indicative moods

The following are examples of the Present tense being used with the continuous aspect in moods other than the indicative.

Present tense imperative mood

Table 12: VTP-13 Present Imperative Matt 7:7

αἰτεῖτε	καὶ	δοθήσεται	ὑμῖν;	ζητεῖτε	καὶ	εὑρήσετε
aiteite	kai	dothēsetai	hymin	zēteite	kai	heurēsete
you ask	and	it will be given	to you	you seek	and	you will find

Ask, and it will be given to you. Seek, and you will find

[This could be translated "Ask (and keep on asking) and it will be given to you. Seek (and keep on seeking) and you will find.]

Present tense - participle

Table 13: VTP-14 Present Participle 1 Jn 3:7

ὁ	ποιῶν	τὴν	δικαιοσύνην	δίκαιός	ἐστιν
ho	poiōn	tēn	dikaiosynēn	dikaios	estin
the	one who is doing	the	righteousness	righteous	he is

The one who does righteousness is righteous

[This could be translated "The one who does righteousness (and keeps on doing righteousness) is righteous.]

VERB

85.1 Summary

A `verb` is the grammatical entity that describes the subject of a sentence. A verb can describe either an action that the subject performs or the state (or condition) of the subject.

85.2 Article

A verb is a word in a sentence that describes either an action by the subject of a sentence, or the subject itself. Therefore, the verb is often the most important word in understanding a sentence or a clause.

In Koiné Greek, the base form of the verb communicates the basic meaning of that term. However, this base form never stands alone. The base form of a verb is usually accompanied by a connecting vowel and a word ending. For example, consider the Greek verb αγαπαω ("I love"). This is the form of the verb that appears in any standard lexicon. The base form of the verb is αγαπ-. This expresses the basic meaning of the verb ("love"). The connecting vowel of this verb is the letter -α-. This connecting vowel can change form depending on the number of syllables in the word and well as the specific word ending used in any given instance. The word ending of this verb is the letter -ω. This word ending indicates the tense, voice, and mood of the verb as well as the person and number of the verb's subject. If the verb is a participle, the word ending can also indicate gender and case. For the verb above, the word ending -ω indicates that the verb is in present tense, active voice, and indicative mood. The word ending also indicates that the subject of the verb is 1st person singular ("I").

In Koiné Greek, sometimes extra letters will be added at the beginning of the base form. This is called an augment. Letters in a verbal augment are NOT considered part of the base form. They are added in certain circumstances depending on the form of the verb used in any given instance.

Note: Koiné Greek contains many irregular verbs that do not follow strictly the patterns of form described above. If you are ever uncertain about the form of any particular verb, consult a lexicon.

85.2.1 Finite verbs

`Finite verbs` are verbs that have a subject and do not require any verbal complement to form a complete sentence.

The finite verb forms in Koiné Greek are marked for tense, whether that be present, aorist, future, imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect.

85.2.2 Non-finite verbs

Properly speaking, `non-finite verbs` are verbal complements that require a finite verb to form a complete sentence.

The non-finite verb forms in Koiné Greek include the infinitive and the participle. Non-finite verbs can sometimes describe an action or an event in such a way that the word functions like a noun.

85.3 Types

Grammarians often distinguish between different types of verbs. When considering the best way to translate a sentence, it is helpful to understand what type of verb is being used in any given instance.

85.3.1 Dynamic (or action) verbs

A `dynamic verb` describes a subject performing an action. The subject is doing something.

85.3.2 Stative (or non-action) verbs

Rather than describing a specific action, a `stative verb` describes the subject's state of being (the way the subject is). The subject is not doing anything.

85.3.3 Transitive verbs

A transitive verb is a dynamic verb that requires an object that receives the verbal action. A sentence with a transitive verb is not complete without the object. Stative verbs are never transitive.

85.3.4 Intransitive verbs

An `intransitive verb` is a verb that does NOT require an object to receive the verbal action. A sentence with an intransitive verb is complete without an object. Dynamic verbs can be either transitive or intransitive, but stative verbs are always intransitive.

85.3.5 Linking verbs

A `linking verb` is a verb that either equates two nouns, or equates a noun and an adjective. A linking verb can be implied by the context in all three biblical languages: Biblical Hebrew, Biblical Aramaic, and Koiné Greek. This is not the case in English, however. In English, linking verbs must be explicitly expressed. Therefore, in many sentences a linking verb must be supplied when translating the Bible into English.

85.3.6 Helping verbs

Helping verbs are extra verbs that "help" express the meaning of the main verb. As a general rule, Koiné Greek does not use helping verbs. However, English uses many different kinds of helping verbs. Often, it is necessary to supply a helping verb in English to express the meaning of a Greek verb.

helping verbs in questions and negations

The following example in English adds the helping verb "have" (not present in the Hebrew text):

helping verbs to express possibility or desirability

English uses helping verbs to express varying degrees of possiblity or desirability of verbs. This includes a vast range from strong possibility (He **can* do this* or He **would* do this*) to weak possibility (He **might* do this* or He **could* do this*) or from strong desirability (He **should* do this* or *Let him do this*) to weak desirability (*May he do this* or He **wants* to do this*).

VERB INTRANSITIVE

86.1 Glossary

Intransitive verbs are verbs that do not take a direct object. [example: I stand. "Stand" is an intransitive verb in the sentence: "I stand."]

Most verbs in the passive tense will be intransitive, but there are a few exceptions.

Table 1: Table - Intran 1

Matthew 2:4				
ποῦ	...	ὁ	Χριστὸς	γεννᾶται
pou	...	ho	Christos	gennatai
where	[is]	the	Christ	to be born

Where is the Christ to be born?

The passive verb γεννᾶται is intransitive.

86.2 Article

Verbs may be classified as Transitive , Intransitive, or Linking . Linking verbs may also be referred to as equative verbs.

Transitive verbs require an object for the action of the verb. The object may be stated or implied. The action of the verb is carried over into (or onto) an object of the verb. Therefore, transitive verbs will always have an object for the verb.

Intransitive verbs do not take an object. The verbal idea of the verb determines if a verb is transitive or intransitive. Intransitive verbs may appear in the active, middle, or passive voice. Although most verbs in the passive voice are intransitive, there are a few instances where a verb in the passive voice is transitive.

Table 2: Table - Intran 2

Mk 5:36				
...	μὴ	φοβοῦ	μόνον	πίστευε.
...	mē	phobou	monon	pisteue.
[Do]	not	you fear	only	you believe

Do not fear, only believe!

[Note: in this sentence both φοβοῦ and πίστευε are intransitive verbs.]

Some verbs can be transitive in one sentence and intransitive in another sentence. πίστευω is a verb which was intransitive in the preceding example, but is transitive in the following example. Generally passive verbs are intransitive, but this is not always the case.

The following is an example where πίστευω is transitive. The sentence starts in verse 4 and ends with verse 7. The table below omits most of the sentence in order to place the subject and verb together.

Table 3: Table - Intran 3

1 Corinthians 13:4 & 7				
ἡ	ἀγάπη	...	πάντα	πιστεύει
hē	agapē	...	panta	pisteuei
the	love	...	all (things)	it believes

Love ... believes all things.

The following is an example of a passive verb (πείθομαι) that is transitive.

Table 4: Table - Intran 4

Acts 26:26			
τι	τούτων	οὐ	πείθομαι
ti	toutōn	ou	peithomai
that	any of these things	not	I persuaded/convinced

I cannot believe that any of these things ... have escaped him

or stated positively "for I am persuaded/convinced that none of these things have escaped him"

VERB LINKING

Glossary

Linking verbs "link" the subject of the sentence by showing a relationship with another noun, pronoun, or adjective. Most verbs show action. Linking verbs show relationship. [Example: David is King of Israel. The linking verb "is" shows a relationship between David and King of Israel.

Table 1: VL-1 Linking Verb

Matthew 6:22						
Ὁ	λύχνος	τοῦ	σώματός	ἐστιν	ὁ	ὀφθαλμός.
Ho	lychnos	tou	sōmatos	estin	ho	ophthalmos.
The	lamp	of the	body	is	the	eye.

The eye is the lamp of the body.

87.1 Article

Verbs may be classified as Transitive, Intransitive, or Linking.

Linking verbs "link" the subject of the sentence by describing a relationship between the subject and another noun, pronoun, or adjective. It is called a "linking verb" because it joins the subject of the sentence with a noun, pronoun, or adjective that tells something about the subject.

Transitive verbs require an object for the action of the verb. The object may be stated or implied. The action of the verb is carried over into (or onto) an object of the verb. Therefore, transitive verbs will always have an object for the verb. [see Transitive]

Intransitive verbs do not take an object. The verbal idea of the verb determines if a verb is transitive or intransitive. [See Intransitive]

Because a participle is a verbal adjective, it can function as an adjective or as a noun. It can also be joined with a linking verb. (See Table VL-3 below)

The verb εἰμί (to be) is the most frequently used linking verb.

There are 2,597 linking verbs in the New Testament.

- 2,129 of the occurrences are with the verb εἰμί
- 275 of the occurrences are with the verb γίνομαι
- 59 of the occurrences are with the verb καλέω

- 39 of the occurrences are with the verb λέγω

- 35 of the occurrences are with the verb ὑπάρχω,

- And the remaining 60 occurrences are with 18 different verbs.

The reader should keep in mind; A verb may be transitive, intransitive or linking depending on its function in the sentence. For example εἰμί occurs 2,458 times in the New Testament, but only 2,129 times does εἰμί function as a linking verb. εἰμί occurs as an intransitive verb or as a transitive verb the other 329 times.

The following is an example of εἰμί (to be) used as a linking verb.

Table 2: Table VL-2

John 6:35									
εἶπεν	αὐτοῖς	ὁ	Ἰησοῦς	ἐγώ	εἰμι	ὁ	ἄρτος	τῆς	ζωῆς
eipen	autois	ho	Iēsous	egō	eimi	ho	artos	tēs	zōēs
he said	to them	the	Jesus	I	I am	the	bread	of	life

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life

The following is an example of εἰμί (to be) used as a transitive verb with a participle phrase ἔχων "one having" as the object of the subject of the sentence. This is also an example of how a verb may function one way in the Greek language and a different way in a different language.

In this instance ἦν (the imperfect active indicative 3rd person singular of εἰμί) serves as a transitive verb. It cannot be a linking verb because there is no separate noun for it to link. The participle ἔχων is the object of the verb. However, in the English translation. The pronoun "He" is a separate word. The sentence then becomes "because he was one who has many possessions." The verb "is" in the English translation now becomes a linking verb linking the pronoun "he" to the participle phrase "one who had many possessions."

Table 3: Table VL-3

Mk 10.22				
ἦν	γὰρ	ἔχων	κτήματα	πολλά
ēn	gar	echōn	ktēmata	polla
he was	for	one who has	possessions	many

because he was one who had many possessions.

The following are two examples of εἰμί as an intransitive verb.

Table 4: VL-4 εἰμί as an intransitive verb

Jn 1:9				
ἦν	τὸ	φῶς	τὸ	ἀληθινὸν
ēn	to	phōs	to	alēthinon
there was	the	light	the	true

There was the true light

Table 5: Table VL-5 εἰμί as an intransitive verb

Jn 8:58				
πρὶν	Ἀβραὰμ	γενέσθαι	ἐγὼ	εἰμί.
prin	Abraam	genesthai	egō	eimi.
Before	Abraham	was	I	I am.

before Abraham was, I AM.

The following is an example of a participle form of εἰμί (οὖσιν) being used as a linking verb.

Table 6: Table VL-6

Mk 2:26					
ἔδωκεν	καὶ	τοῖς	σὺν	αὐτῷ	οὖσιν
edōken	kai	tois	syn	autō	ousin
he gave	also	to (those)	with	him	being

he even gave (some) to those who were with him

VERB TRANSITIVE

88.1 Glossary

A verb which can take a direct object is transitive (e.g. He ate the bread).

Table 1: Table Tran 1

Matthew 12:4				
τοὺς	ἄρτους	τῆς	Προθέσεως	ἔφαγεν
tous	artous	tēs	Protheseōs	ephagen
the	bread	of the	of the setting forth/presentation	they ate

... they ate the bread of the presence

Note: In this example ἔφαγεν (they ate) is the transitive verb and ἄρτους (bread) is the direct object.

88.2 Article

Verbs may be classified as Transitive, Intransitive, or Linking . Linking verbs may also be referred to as equative verbs.

Transitive verbs require an object for the action of the verb. Therefore, transitive verbs will always have an object for the verb. The object may be stated or implied. The action of the verb is carried over into (or onto) an object of the verb. The direct object is a noun (or noun phrase) that receives the action of the transitive verb.

> [Note] Participles function as a verbal adjective and Infinitives function as a verbal noun. Therefore participles and infinitives can act like a transitive verb and take a direct object because both participles and infinitives can function like a verb in a clause.

Most verbs take their direct object in the acusative case, but some verbs take their dirct object in the genetive or dative case. [See Dative_Direct_object or Genitive_Subject-Object and tables Tables_4a_and_4b below.]

Intransitive verbs do not take an object.

The verbal idea of the verb determines if a verb is transitive or intransitive. Intransitive verbs may appear in the active, middle, or passive voice. Although most verbs in the passive voice are intransitive, there are a few instances where a verb in the passive voice is transitive. See Intransitive verb.

Some verbs can be transitive in one sentence and intransitive in another sentence. ἐσθίω (2nd aorist of ἔφαγον) is a verb which can be both transitive or intransitive depending upon the context.

ἐσθέω is transitive in Matthew 12:4

Table 2: Table Tran 2

Matthew 12:4				
τοὺς	ἄρτους	τῆς	Προθέσεως	ἔφαγεν
tous	artous	tēs	Protheseōs	ephagen
the	bread	the	of the setting forth/presentation	they ate

... they ate the bread of the presence

ἐσθέω is intransitive in the following example from Mark 6:42.

Table 3: Table Tran 3

Mark 6:42				
καὶ	ἔφαγον	πάντες	καὶ	ἐχορτάσθησαν
kai	ephagon	pantes	kai	echortasthēsan
and	they ate	all	and	they were satisfied

and they all ate and were satisfied.

88.2.1 Tables 4a and 4b Case of Direct object may vary

The following two tables (4a and 4b) are an example of a single sentence with three different transitive verbs. However, each verb takes its object in a different case.

- ἀκούω (present active indicative third person plural ἀκούουσιν) takes its object in the genitive case.

- γινώσκω (present active indicative first person singular γινώσκω) takes its object in the accusative case.

- ἀκολουθέω (present active indicative third person plural ἀκολουθοῦσίν) takes its object in the dative case.

Table 4: Table 4a

John 10:27a						
τὰ	πρόβατα	τὰ	ἐμὰ	τῆς	φωνῆς	μου	ἀκούουσιν
ta	probata	ta	ema	tēs	phōnēs	mou	akouousin
the	sheep	the	my	the	voice	my	they hear

My sheep hear my voice;

Table 5: Table 4b

John 10:27b					
κἀγὼ	γινώσκω	αὐτά	καὶ	ἀκολουθοῦσίν	μοι
kagō	ginōskō	auta	kai	akolouthousin	moi
and I	I Know	them	and	they follow	me
and I know them	and they follow me.				

EIGHTYNINE

VOICE

89.1 Glossary

Voice is an attribute of a verb indicating whether the subject performs the action (active voice), whether the action is performed on the subject (passive voice), or whether the subject performs the action on itself (middle voice). Examples are: He washed the baby (active voice); The baby was washed by the mom (passive voice); The girl washed herself (middle voice).

89.2 Article

VOICE ACTIVE

90.1 Glossary

A verb in the active voice indicates that the subject performs the action (e.g., He washed the baby).

90.2 Article

VOICE MIDDLE

91.1 Glossary

Middle voice indicates that the action of a verb is done by the subject to itself, or for its benefit (e.g., He washed himself).

91.2 Article

NINETYTWO

VOICE PASSIVE

92.1 Glossary

A verb in the passive voice indicates that the action of the verbs is performed on the subject (e.g., The baby was washed by the mother.)

92.2 Article

BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following resources were consulted in the creation and revision of the unfoldingWord Greek Grammar.

Black, David Alan. Learn to Read New Testament Greek. 3rd ed. Nashville, TN: B&H Publishing Group, 2009.

Black, David Alan. It's Still Greek to Me: An Easy-to-Understand Guide to Intermediate Greek. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Books, 1998.

Buttmann, Alexander. A Grammar of the New Testament Greek. Andover: Warren F. Draper, 1891.

Caragounis, Chrys C. The Development of Greek and the New Testament: Morphology, Syntax, Phonology, and Textual Transmission. Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 2004.

Dana, H.E., and Mantey, Julius R. A Manual Grammar of the Greek New Testament New York, NY: The Macmillan Company, 1957.

Davis, William Hersey. Beginner's Grammar of the Greek New Testament. Revised and expanded edition. Eugene, OR: Wipf and Stock Publishers, 2005.

Decker, Rodney J. Reading Koine Greek: An Introduction and Integrated Workbook. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Academic, 2014.

Dionysios Thrax. The Grammar of Dionysios Thrax. Translated by Thomas Davidson. St. Louis: R. P. Studley, 1874.

Fanning, Buist M. Verbal Aspect in New Testament Greek. Oxford Theological Monographs. Oxford: Clarendon, 1990.

Farrar, Frederic W. A Brief Greek Syntax and Hints on Greek Accidence. London: Longmans, Green, and Co., 1867.

Groton, Anne H. From Alpha to Omega: A Beginning Course in Classical Greek. Fourth Edition. Newburyport, MA: Focus Publishing, 2013.

Harvey, John D. Greek Is Good Grief: Laying the Foundation for Exegesis and Exposition. Eugene, OR: Wipf & Stock, 2007.

Heiser, Michael S., and Vincent M. Setterholm*. Glossary of Morpho-Syntactic Database Terminology.* Lexham Press, 2013; 2013.

Jannaris, Antonius N. An Historical Greek Grammar: Chiefly of the Attic Dialect as Written and Spoken from Classical Antiquity Down to the Present Time. London: MacMillan & Co., 1897.

Long, Fredrick J. Kairos: A Beginning Greek Grammar. Mishawaka, IN: Fredrick J. Long, 2005.

Long, Gary A. Grammatical Concepts 101 for Biblical Greek: Learning Biblical Greek Grammatical Concepts through English Grammar. Peabody, MA: Hendrickson Publishers, 2006.

Machen, J. Gresham. New Testament Greek for Beginners. New York, NY: The Macmillan Company, 1951.

Matthewson, David L., and Elodie Ballantine Emig. Intermediate Greek Grammar: Syntax for Students of the New Testament. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Academic, 2016.

Moulton, James Hope. An Introduction to the Study of New Testament Greek. London: Charles H. Kelly, 1895.

Mounce, William D. Basics of Biblical Greek: Grammar. Edited by Verlyn D. Verbrugge. Third Edition. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan, 2009.

Mounce, William D. Biblical Greek: A Compact Guide. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan, 2011.

Nunn, H. P. V. The Elements of New Testament Greek. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1923.

Porter, Stanley E. Idioms of the Greek New Testament. Sheffield: JSOT, 1999.

Porter, Stanley E., Jeffrey T. Reed, and Matthew Brook O'Donnell. Fundamentals of New Testament Greek. Grand Rapids, MI; Cambridge: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, 2010.

Robertson, A. T. A Grammar of the Greek New Testament in the Light of Historical Research. Logos Bible Software, 2006.

Sophocles, E. A. A Greek Grammar, for the Use of Learners. Ninth Edition. Hartford: H. Huntington, 1844.

Summers, Ray, and Thomas Sawyer. Essentials of New Testament Greek. Rev. ed. Nashville, TN: Broadman & Holman, 1995.

Wallace, Daniel B. Greek Grammar beyond the Basics: An Exegetical Syntax of the New Testament. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan, 1996.

Young, Richard A. Intermediate New Testament Greek: A Linguistic and Exegetical Approach. Nashville, TN: Broadman & Holman, 1994.

Zerwick, Max. Biblical Greek Illustrated by Examples. Vol. 114. English ed., adapted from the fourth Latin ed. Scripta Pontificii Instituti Biblici. Rome: Pontificio Istituto Biblico, 1963.